# Symplectic topology of Mañé's critical values

### K. Cieliebak, U. Frauenfelder and G.P. Paternain

### August 11, 2010

Abstract: We study the dynamics and symplectic topology of energy hypersurfaces of mechanical Hamiltonians on twisted cotangent bundles. We pay particular attention to periodic orbits, displaceability, stability and the contact type property, and the changes that occur at the Mañé critical value c. Our main tool is Rabinowitz Floer homology. We show that it is defined for hypersurfaces that are either stable tame or virtually contact, and that it is invariant under homotopies in these classes. If the configuration space admits a metric of negative curvature, then Rabinowitz Floer homology does not vanish for energy levels k>c and, as a consequence, these level sets are not displaceable. We provide a large class of examples in which Rabinowitz Floer homology is non-zero for energy levels k>c but vanishes for k< c, so levels above and below c cannot be connected by a stable tame homotopy. Moreover, we show that for strictly 1/4-pinched negative curvature and non-exact magnetic fields all sufficiently high energy levels are non-stable, provided that the dimension of the base manifold is even and different from two.

### Contents

1	Introduction			
2	Stable Hamiltonian structures and hypersurfaces			
3	Tame hypersurfaces			14
4	Rah	oinowit	z Floer homology	16
	4.1	Rabin	owitz action functional	18
	4.2	Bound	on the Lagrange multiplier	20
		4.2.1	A second Liapunov function for gradient flow lines	20
		4.2.2	Admissible tuples	24

<sup>\*</sup>Partially supported by DFG grant CI 45/1-3

		4.2.3 The stable pseudo-distance	0
		4.2.4 The time-dependent case	1
	4.3	An existence result for a periodic Reeb orbit	9
	4.4	Approvable perturbations	5
	4.5	Definition of Rabinowitz Floer homology	3
	4.6	Invariance	7
5	Ma	ñé's critical values 66	0
	5.1	Definition and basic properties	0
	5.2	Hyperbolic spaces	3
	5.3	The exact case	5
	5.4	Instability for large energies when $[\sigma] \neq 0$ 68	8
6	Hor	mogeneous examples 73	3
	6.1	Tori	4
	6.2	The Heisenberg group	6
	6.3	$PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$	1
	6.4	<b>Sol</b> -manifolds	0
	6.5	The case of $\sigma$ symplectic	2
7	Pro	ofs of the theorems 94	4
	7.1	Proof of Theorem 1.1	4
	7.2	Proof of Theorem 1.2	6
	7.3	Proof of Theorem 1.3	6
	7.4	Proof of Theorem 1.4	6
	7.5	Proof of Theorem 1.5	6
	7.6	Proof of Theorems 1.6, 1.8 and 1.9 9	7

# 1 Introduction

In this paper we study the significance of Mañé's critical value to the symplectic topology of energy hypersurfaces. Steps in this direction were taken in [7,62,71], but here we will have a different focus. We will attempt to relate Mañé's critical value with stable Hamiltonian structures and a new type of Floer homology that we develop along the lines of [12], namely  $Rabinowitz\ Floer\ homology$ .

On the cotangent bundle  $\tau\colon T^*M\to M$  of a closed manifold M we consider

autonomous Hamiltonian systems defined by a convex Hamiltonian

$$H(q,p) = \frac{1}{2}|p|^2 + U(q)$$

and a twisted symplectic form

$$\omega = dp \wedge dq + \tau^* \sigma.$$

Here  $dp \wedge dq$  is the canonical symplectic form in canonical coordinates (q,p) on  $T^*M$ , |p| denotes the dual norm of a Riemannian metric g on M,  $U \colon M \to \mathbb{R}$  is a smooth potential, and  $\sigma$  is a closed 2-form on M. This Hamiltonian system describes the motion of a particle on M subject to the conservative force  $-\nabla U$  and the magnetic field  $\sigma$ .

We assume that  $\sigma$  vanishes on  $\pi_2(M)$ , so its pullback  $\pi^*\sigma$  to the universal cover  $\pi \colon \widetilde{M} \to M$  is exact. The  $Ma\widetilde{n}\acute{e}$  critical value  $^1$  is defined as

$$c = c(g, \sigma, U) := \inf_{\theta} \sup_{q \in \widetilde{M}} \widetilde{H}(q, \theta_q),$$

where the infimum is taken over all 1-forms  $\theta$  on  $\widetilde{M}$  with  $d\theta = \pi^* \sigma$  and  $\widetilde{H}$  is the lift of H.

We wish to understand how dynamical and symplectic topological properties of regular level sets  $\Sigma_k = H^{-1}(k)$  change as k passes the Mañé critical value. More specifically, we will investigate the following properties.

Dynamics. The dynamics usually changes drastically at the Mañé critical value; we will provide abundant examples of this in Section 6 of this paper. We will pay particular attention to the existence or non-existence of periodic orbits in given free homotopy classes of loops. The study of the existence of closed orbits of a charged particle in a magnetic field was initiated by V.I. Arnold [4] and S.P. Novikov [58] in the 1980's.

Displaceability. A subset A of a symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$  is displaceable if there exists a Hamiltonian diffeomorphism (time-1 map of a time-dependent compactly supported Hamiltonian system)  $\phi$  with  $\phi(A) \cap A = \emptyset$ . Among the many consequences of displaceability, the most relevant for this paper is the following result of Schlenk [65]: If for H as above and some  $k_0$  the set  $\{H \leq k_0\}$  is displaceable, then it has finite Hofer-Zehnder capacity (see [40]) and for almost every  $k \leq k_0$  the energy level  $\Sigma_k$  carries a contractible periodic orbit.

Contact type. A hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectic manifold  $(V^{2n}, \omega)$  is of contact type if  $\omega|_{\Sigma} = d\lambda$  for a contact form  $\lambda$  on  $\Sigma$ , i.e. a 1-form such that  $\lambda \wedge (d\lambda)^{n-1}$  is nowhere vanishing. This property was introduced by Weinstein [69] and has important dynamical consequences. For example, for large classes of contact type hypersurfaces the existence of a periodic orbit has been proved ("Weinstein

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>More generally, there is a Mañé critical value associated to any cover of M on which  $\sigma$  becomes exact. In this paper, we will mostly restrict to the universal and abelian covers.

conjecture", see e.g. [40, 70]). Moreover, algebraic counts of periodic orbits can be organized into invariants of such hypersurfaces such as contact homology or symplectic field theory [23].

We say that a hypersurface  $\Sigma$  is virtually contact if  $\pi^*\omega|_{\widetilde{\Sigma}} = d\lambda$  for a contact form  $\lambda$  on a cover  $\pi\colon \widetilde{\Sigma} \to \Sigma$  satisfying

$$\sup_{x \in \widetilde{\Sigma}} |\lambda_x| \le C < \infty, \qquad \inf_{x \in \widetilde{\Sigma}} \lambda(R) \ge \varepsilon > 0,$$

where  $|\cdot|$  is a metric on  $\Sigma$  and R is a vector field generating  $\ker(\omega|_{\Sigma})$  (both pulled back to  $\widetilde{\Sigma}$ ). A virtually contact homotopy is a smooth homotopy  $(\Sigma_t, \lambda_t)$  of virtually contact hypersurfaces together with the corresponding 1-forms on the covers such that the preceding conditions hold with constants  $C, \varepsilon$  independent of t.

Stability and tameness. A hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectic manifold  $(V^{2n}, \omega)$  is stable if there exists a 1-form  $\lambda$  on  $\Sigma$  which is nonzero on  $\ker(\omega|_{\Sigma})$  and satisfies  $\ker(\omega|_{\Sigma}) \subset \ker(d\lambda)$ . Note that contact type implies stability, but stability is more general, e.g. it allows for  $\omega|_{\Sigma}$  to be non-exact. The notion of stability was introduced by Hofer and Zehnder [40] and shares many consequences of the contact type condition, e.g. existence results for periodic orbits [40] and algebraic invariants arising from symplectic field theory [23]. A stable homotopy is a smooth homotopy  $(\Sigma_t, \lambda_t)$  of stable hypersurfaces together with the corresponding 1-forms.

Suppose now  $\omega$  vanishes on  $\pi_2(V)$ , and let  $X(\Sigma)$  be the set of all closed characteristics in  $\Sigma$  which are contractible in V. We define the function

$$\Omega \colon X(\Sigma) \to \mathbb{R}$$

by choosing for  $v \in X(\Sigma)$  a filling disk  $\bar{v}$  in V which exists since v is contractible in V, and setting

$$\Omega(v) = \int \bar{v}^* \omega.$$

The pair  $(\Sigma, \lambda)$  is said to be *tame* if there exists a positive constant c such that

$$\left| \int v^* \lambda \right| \le c |\Omega(v)|$$

for all  $v \in X(\Sigma)$ . Again, abundant examples of tame stable hypersurfaces will be given in Section 6, but we should mention that there are also examples of stable non-tame hypersurfaces, see [21, Example 5.1] and [17].

A stable homotopy  $(\Sigma_t, \lambda_t)$  is said to be *tame* if each  $(\Sigma_t, \lambda_t)$  is tame and the constant c is independent of t.

We remark that when V is a cotangent bundle  $T^*M$ , then  $X(\Sigma)$  coincides with the closed orbits in  $\Sigma$  whose projection to M is contractible. Moreover, if dim  $M \geq 3$  and there is no potential, it follows from the homotopy sequence of

a fibration that  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  injects into  $\pi_1(T^*M)$  and thus  $X(\Sigma)$  coincides with the set of closed orbits in  $\Sigma$  which are contractible in  $\Sigma$  itself.

Rabinowitz Floer homology. In [12] the first two authors associated to a contact type hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectic manifold  $(V,\omega)$  (satisfying suitable conditions, see Section 4) its Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma)$ . This is a graded  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -vector space which is invariant under contact type homotopies of  $\Sigma$ . Its relevance for our purposes rests on the following two results in [12]: Displaceability of  $\Sigma$  implies vanishing of  $RFH(\Sigma)$ , and vanishing of  $RFH(\Sigma)$  implies the existence of a periodic orbit on  $\Sigma$  which is contractible in V. To make these results applicable to the situation considered in this paper, we generalize in Section 4 the construction of Rabinowitz Floer homology to hypersurfaces that are stable tame or virtually contact, and to the corresponding homotopies. The generalization to the stable case is definitely non-trivial. The generalization to the virtually contact case is straightforward, but necessary, as we will try to explain in due time. In what follows we shall assume that  $\Sigma$  is separating, i.e.  $V \setminus \Sigma$  consists of two connected components.

We call a symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$  geometrically bounded if it admits a  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure J and a complete Riemannian metric such that

(i) there are positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  such that

$$\omega(v, Jv) \ge c_1 |v|^2, \quad |\omega(u, v)| \le c_2 |u| |v|$$

for all tangent vectors u and v to V;

(ii) The sectional curvature of the metric is bounded above and its injectivity radius is bounded away from zero.

This is slightly stronger than the corresponding notion in [6] since we demand  $\omega$ -compatibility. It is proved in [46] that twisted cotangent bundles are geometrically bounded.

**Theorem 1.1.** Let  $(V, \omega)$  be a geometrically bounded symplectic manifold such that  $\omega|_{\pi_2(V)} = 0$  (e.g. a twisted cotangent bundle as above). Then:

- (a) Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma)$  is defined for each tame stable hypersurface  $\Sigma$  and invariant under tame stable homotopies.
- (b) Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma)$  is defined for each virtually contact hypersurface  $\Sigma$  and invariant under virtually contact homotopies provided that  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  injects into  $\pi_1(V)$ .
- (c) If  $\Sigma$  is as in (a) or (b) and is displaceable, then  $RFH(\Sigma) = 0$ .
- (d) If  $\Sigma$  is as in (a) or (b) satisfies  $RFH(\Sigma) = 0$ , then it carries a periodic orbit which is contractible in V.

We remark at once that Schlenk's result alluded to above can be derived right away from Theorem 1.1 if we assume that the hypersurface is tame. However, the compactness result proved in Section 4 will show that one can recover

Schlenk's result fully, i.e. we can do without the tameness assumption, this is explained in Subsection 4.3.

One of the goals of this paper is to provide supporting evidence for the following paradigms:

(k > c): Above the Mañé critical value,  $\Sigma_k$  is virtually contact. It may or may not be stable. Its Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  is defined and nonzero, so  $\Sigma_k$  is non-displaceable. The dynamics on  $\Sigma_k$  is like that of a geodesic flow; in particular, it has a periodic orbit in every nontrivial free homotopy class.

(k=c): At the Mañé critical value,  $\Sigma_k$  is non-displaceable and can be expected to be non-stable (hence non-contact). (When M is the 2-torus, an example is given in [21] in which  $\Sigma_c$  is of contact type.)

(k < c): Below the Mañé critical value,  $\Sigma_k$  may or may not be of contact type. It is stable and displaceable (provided that  $\chi(M) = 0$ ), so its Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  is defined and vanishes. In particular,  $\Sigma_k$  has a contractible periodic orbit.

Some of these statements will be proved, others verified for various classes of examples, while some remain largely open. It should be said that the paradigms for energies  $k \leq c$  are only rough approximations to the true picture. For example, work in progress [47] shows that there are convex superlinear Hamiltonians on  $\mathbb{T}^n$  (for any  $n \geq 2$ ) for which  $\Sigma_c$  is actually stable.

The first supporting evidence for the paradigms comes from the following

**Theorem 1.2.** For  $\sigma = 0$  all the paradigms are true. Moreover, in this case all regular level sets are of contact type.

A well-known example with  $\sigma \neq 0$  where all the paradigms are true is a closed hyperbolic surface with  $\sigma$  the area form [29]. Here for k > c = 1/2,  $\Sigma_k$  is contact and Anosov with all closed orbits non-contractible; for k < 1/2,  $\Sigma_k$  is stable (in fact contact with the opposite orientation) and the flow is completely periodic with contractible orbits; for k = 1/2,  $\Sigma_k$  is unstable and the flow is the horocycle flow without periodic orbits. We briefly discuss this example, as well as its generalization to higher dimensions, in Section 5.2.

**Theorem 1.3.** Suppose that M admits a metric of negative curvature. Then for k > c the Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  is defined and does not vanish. In particular,  $\Sigma_k$  is non-displaceable for  $k \geq c$ .

Remark. We point out that the chosen metric on M need not have negative curvature (we merely ask the existence of such a metric on M) and the dynamics on  $\Sigma_k$  need not be a small perturbation of the geodesic flow. The proof of Theorem 1.3 uses invariance of Rabinowitz Floer homology in a crucial way. In fact, existence of a metric of negative curvature is a technical hypothesis that can most likely be removed by establishing invariance of Rabinowitz Floer homology under more general deformations, e.g. deforming the symplectic form in a suitable class or adding an additional Hamiltonian term.  $^2$ 

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Note added in proof: Non-vanishing of  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  has in the meantime been proven with-

If  $\sigma$  is exact one can define another Mañé critical value

$$c_0 = c_0(g, \sigma, U) := \inf_{\theta} \sup_{q \in M} H(q, \theta_q),$$

where the infimum is taken over all 1-forms  $\theta$  on M with  $d\theta = \sigma$ . Note that  $c_0 \geq c$ . For  $k > c_0$  the level set  $\Sigma_k$  encloses the Lagrangian graph  $\operatorname{gr}(-\theta)$  and is therefore non-displaceable by Gromov's theorem [32]. However, there are examples [61] with  $c < c_0$ . Non-displaceability for the gap  $c \leq k \leq c_0$  is new. In Theorem 5.5 we show that the gap appears rather frequently and in Section 6 we will explain how a gap of size 1/4 appears quite explicitly in the geometry  $PSL(2, \mathbb{R})$ .

We set  $c_0 := \infty$  if  $\sigma$  is non-exact. Then the contact type property behaves as follows with respect to the values c and  $c_0$ . Suppose dim  $M \ge 3$ . Then:

- for  $k > c_0$ ,  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type (Lemma 5.3);
- for  $c < k \le c_0$ ,  $\Sigma_k$  is virtually contact but not of contact type (Lemma 5.1 and [18, Theorem B.1]).

It turns out that whole intervals of unstable levels may appear in the gap. The first example where this phenomenon occurs was constructed in [61] on surfaces of negative curvature and with exact  $\sigma$ , see Theorem 5.4 below. With non-exact  $\sigma$ , this phenomenon always occurs for strictly 1/4-pinched negative sectional curvature.

**Theorem 1.4.** Let (M,g) be a closed Riemannian manifold of even dimension different from two whose sectional curvature satisfies the pinching condition  $-4 \le K < -1$ . Let  $\sigma$  be a closed 2-form with cohomology class  $[\sigma] \ne 0$ . Then  $c < c_0 = \infty$  and for any k > c sufficiently large, the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is not stable.

The theorem becomes false if the strict pinching condition is replaced by the weak one  $-4 \le K \le -1$ : Compact quotients of complex hyperbolic space with  $\sigma$  given by the Kähler form are stable for high energies (cf. Subsection 5.2).

The next result is an easy consequence of the results by Schlenk and will be useful to show non-stability at the Mañé critical value in the various examples.

**Theorem 1.5.** Suppose that at the Mañé critical value c,  $\Sigma_c$  has no contractible periodic orbits. Then  $\Sigma_c$  is non-stable provided that all level sets  $\Sigma_k$  with k < c are displaceable.

More evidence for the displaceability of  $\Sigma_k$  with k < c comes from results of F. Laudenbach and J.-C. Sikorav [45] and L. Polterovich [63] which assert that

out the hypothesis of a metric of negative curvature, for  $\sigma$  exact and  $k > c_0$  in [1], and for general  $\sigma$  and all k > c in [55].

the zero section of  $(T^*M, \omega)$  is actually displaceable if  $\sigma$  is non-zero (assuming  $\chi(M) = 0$ ). Moreover, for a large class of cotangent bundles of solvable manifolds with  $[\sigma] \neq 0$ , displaceability for all  $k < c = \infty$  is proved in [10].

As an illustration of the homogeneous examples considered in Section 6, let G be the 3-dimensional Heisenberg group of matrices

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} 1 & x & z \\ 0 & 1 & y \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right),\,$$

where  $x,y,z\in\mathbb{R}$ . The 1-form  $\gamma:=dz-xdy$  is left-invariant and we let  $\sigma:=d\gamma$  be the exact magnetic field. If  $\Gamma$  is a co-compact lattice in  $G,\,M:=\Gamma\setminus G$  is a closed 3-manifold and  $\sigma$  descends to an exact 2-form on M. Now let H be the left-invariant Hamiltonian defined in dual coordinates by

$$2H := p_x^2 + (p_y + xp_z)^2 + p_z^2.$$

**Theorem 1.6.** Consider M, H and  $\sigma$  as above. Then all the paradigms are true. More precisely: Each level  $\Sigma_k$  except the Mañé critical level  $c = c_0 = 1/2$  is stable and tame. For k > 1/2 it is contact and  $RFH(\Sigma_k) \neq 0$ . For k < 1/2 it is non-contact and displaceable, so  $RFH(\Sigma_k) = 0$ .  $\Sigma_k$  has no contractible periodic orbits for  $k \geq 1/2$ . The level set  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  is not stable.

By invariance of Rabinowitz Floer homology under tame stable homotopies, this implies

**Corollary 1.7.** In the example of Theorem 1.6 two level sets  $\Sigma_k, \Sigma_\ell$  with  $k < 1/2 < \ell$  are smoothly homotopic and tame stable, but not tame stably homotopic.

An even more intriguing example arises on compact quotients  $M := \Gamma \backslash PSL(2, \mathbb{R})$ . Let  $(x, y, \theta)$  be coordinates on  $PSL(2, \mathbb{R})$  arising from its identification with  $S\mathbb{H}^2 \cong \mathbb{H}^2 \times S^1$ , the unit tangent bundle of the upper half plane. The left-invariant 1-form  $\gamma = dx/y + d\theta$  gives rise to an exact magnetic field  $\sigma := d\gamma$  on M. Let H be the left-invariant Hamiltonian defined in dual coordinates by

$$2H := (yp_x - p_\theta)^2 + (yp_y)^2 + p_\theta^2.$$

**Theorem 1.8.** Consider M, H and  $\sigma$  as above. Then all the paradigms are true. More precisely: Each level  $\Sigma_k$  except the Mañé critical levels c=1/4 and  $c_0=1/2$  is stable and tame. For k>1/2 it is contact and  $RFH(\Sigma_k)\neq 0$ . For 1/4 < k < 1/2 it is non-contact and  $RFH(\Sigma_k)\neq 0$ . For k<1/4 it is non-contact and displaceable, so  $RFH(\Sigma_k)=0$ .  $\Sigma_k$  has no contractible periodic orbits for  $k\geq 1/4$ . The level sets  $\Sigma_{1/4}$  and  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  are not stable.

Remark. Non-stability of the Mañé critical level c in Theorems 1.6 and 1.8 follows from Theorem 1.5. Non-stability of the level  $c_0$  in Theorem 1.8 follows from a detailed analysis of the dynamics on the level set. Note that the level  $c_0$  is virtually contact; in fact for any k > 1/4,  $\Sigma_k$  is virtually contact.

Finally, we also point out the following examples with infinite Mañé critical value. An analogous picture arises on Sol-manifolds discussed in Section 6.4.

**Theorem 1.9.** Consider the n-torus  $M = \mathbb{T}^n$  and a nonzero constant 2-form  $\sigma$ . Then the Mañé critical value is  $c = \infty$  and all level sets  $\Sigma_k$  are non-contact, stable, tame and displaceable, so  $RFH(\Sigma_k) = 0$  for all k.

We conclude this paper with a discussion of very high and low energy levels. For levels k>c the only remaining issue is:

Conjecture. For k > c the Rabinowitz Floer homology  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  does not vanish. In particular,  $\Sigma_k$  is non-displaceable for  $k \geq c$ .

It is known that for k > c,  $\Sigma_k$  carries a periodic orbit in every nontrivial free homotopy class of loops (this is proved in [60] under a mild technical condition on  $\pi_1(M)$ , which is removed in [54].)

For k < c the dynamics is much less well understood, even for very small values of k. If  $\sigma \neq 0$ , the results of Polterovich and Schlenk mentioned above yield a  $k_0 > 0$  such that  $\Sigma_k$  is displaceable for all  $k \leq k_0$  and carries a contractible periodic orbit for almost all  $k \leq k_0$ . However, the following basic question is wide open:

Question. Is  $\Sigma_k$  stable for sufficiently small k, at least in the case that  $\sigma$  is a symplectic form on M?

A positive answer to the question would give an alternative proof of the existence of closed contractible orbits on every low energy level for  $\sigma$  symplectic. This has been recently proved by V. Ginzburg and B. Gürel [30]. In Section 6.5 (Proposition 6.19) we give an affirmative answer in the homogeneous symplectic case: Let  $M = \Gamma \setminus G$  be a compact homogeneous space with a left-invariant metric and a left-invariant symplectic form  $\sigma$ . Then there exists  $k_0 > 0$  such that for all  $k < k_0$  the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is stable.

Acknowledgements: We wish to thank L. Macarini, F. Schlenk and E. Volkov for several useful discussions related to this paper. We also thank W. Merry for comments and corrections on previous drafts. We thank the organizers of the wonderful Conference on Symplectic Geometry, Kyoto 2007, which inspired the present work. Finally, we thank the referee for numerous corrections.

## 2 Stable Hamiltonian structures and hypersurfaces

Stable Hamiltonian structures. Let  $\Sigma$  be a closed oriented manifold of dimension 2n-1. A Hamiltonian structure on  $\Sigma$  is a closed 2-form  $\omega$  such that  $\omega^{n-1} \neq 0$ . So its kernel  $\ker(\omega)$  defines a 1-dimensional foliation which we call the *characteristic foliation* of  $\omega$ . We orient the characteristic foliation by a 1-form  $\lambda$  such that  $\lambda \wedge \omega^{n-1} > 0$ .

A Hamiltonian structure is called *stable* if there exists a 1-form  $\lambda$  such that  $\ker \omega \subset \ker d\lambda$  and  $\lambda \wedge \omega^{n-1} > 0$ . We call  $\lambda$  a *stabilizing 1-form*. Define the Reeb vector field R by  $\lambda(R) = 1$  and  $i_R \omega = 0$  (which implies  $i_R d\lambda = 0$ ).

The following two results give equivalent formulations of stability.

**Theorem 2.1** (Wadsley [68]). A Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is stable if and only if its characteristic foliation is geodesible, i.e. there exists a Riemannian metric such that all leaves are geodesics.

**Theorem 2.2** (Sullivan [67]). A Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is non-stable if and only if there exists a foliation cycle which can be arbitrarily well approximated by boundaries of singular 2-chains tangent to the foliation.

The simplest obstruction to stability that can appear in Sullivan's theorem is a *Reeb component*, i.e. an embedded annulus tangent to the characteristic foliation such that its boundary components are closed leaves with opposite orientations.

The following criterion for stability (whose proof is immediate) will be useful in later examples.

**Lemma 2.3.** Let  $(\Sigma^{\pm}, \omega^{\pm})$  be stable Hamiltonian structures and  $f: \Sigma^{+} \to \Sigma^{-}$  a smooth (not necessarily injective) map which maps leaves diffeomorphically onto leaves. If a 1-form  $\lambda$  stabilizes  $(\Sigma^{-}, \omega^{-})$ , then  $f^{*}\lambda$  stabilizes  $(\Sigma^{+}, \omega^{+})$ .

For a Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  we denote by

$$\Lambda(\Sigma,\omega) := \{ \lambda \in \Omega^1(\Sigma) : \ker \omega \subset \ker d\lambda, \ \lambda \wedge \omega^{n-1} > 0 \}$$

the space of stabilizing 1-forms. It obviously satisfies

**Lemma 2.4.** The space  $\Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  is a convex cone in  $\Omega^1(\Sigma)$ . In particular, if it is nonempty, then it is contractible.

Stable hypersurfaces. We call a closed oriented connected hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a connected symplectic manifold  $(V^{2n}, \omega)$  stable if the following holds:

- (i)  $\omega|_{\Sigma}$  defines a stable Hamiltonian structure;
- (ii)  $\Sigma$  is separating, i.e.  $V \setminus \Sigma$  consists of two connected components.

Condition (a) in the following lemma gives a more dynamical formulation of stability and justification for its name.

**Lemma 2.5** ([16]). For a closed hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$  the following are equivalent:

- (a)  $\Sigma$  is stable in the sense of [40], i.e. there exists a tubular neighborhood  $(-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \times \Sigma$  of  $\Sigma = \{0\} \times \Sigma$  such that the Hamiltonian line fields on  $\{r\} \times \Sigma$  are conjugate for all  $r \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ .
- (b) There exists a vector field Y transverse to  $\Sigma$  such that  $\ker(\omega|_{\Sigma}) \subset \ker(L_Y\omega|_{\Sigma})$ .
- (c)  $(\Sigma, \omega|_{\Sigma})$  is a stable Hamiltonian structure.

A stable homotopy of hypersurfaces in  $(V, \omega)$  is a smooth homotopy  $(\Sigma_t, \lambda_t)$  of stable hypersurfaces together with stabilizing 1-forms.

Stable tubular neighbourhoods. Now assume that  $\Sigma$  is a stable hypersurface in a symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$ . We abbreviate

$$\omega_{\Sigma} = \omega|_{\Sigma}.$$

If  $\lambda_{\Sigma} \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega_{\Sigma})$  we call the pair  $(\Sigma, \lambda_{\Sigma})$  a stabilized hypersurface. For a stabilized hypersurface  $(\Sigma, \lambda_{\Sigma})$  a stable tubular neighbourhood is a pair  $(\rho, \psi)$  where  $\rho > 0$  and  $\psi \colon [-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma \to V$  is an embedding satisfying

$$\psi|_{\{0\}\times\Sigma} = \mathrm{id}|_{\Sigma}, \quad \psi^*\omega = \omega_{\Sigma} + d(r\lambda_{\Sigma}) = \omega_{\Sigma} + rd\lambda_{\Sigma} + dr \wedge \lambda_{\Sigma}.$$

Note that a stable tubular neighbourhood satisfies condition (a) of Lemma 2.5. We abbreviate by  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda_{\Sigma})$  the space of stable tubular neighbourhoods of  $(\Sigma, \lambda_{\Sigma})$ . We further denote by

$$\mathcal{T}(\Sigma) = \bigcup_{\lambda_{\Sigma} \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega|_{\Sigma})} \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda_{\Sigma})$$

the space of stable tubular neighbourhoods for the stable (but not stabilized) hypersurface  $\Sigma$ . If  $(\Sigma_{\sigma}, \lambda_{\sigma})$  for  $\sigma \in [0, 1]$  is a stable homotopy of hypersurfaces we abbreviate by  $\mathcal{T}(\{\Sigma_{\sigma}\})$  the space of smooth families  $(\rho_{\sigma}, \psi_{\sigma})$  of stable tubular neighbourhoods.

**Proposition 2.6.** (a) Assume that  $(\Sigma_{\sigma}, \lambda_{\sigma})$  is a stable homotopy of compact hypersurfaces. Then  $\mathcal{T}(\{\Sigma_{\sigma}\})$  is nonempty.

(b) If  $\Sigma$  is a compact stable hypersurface, then  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma)$  is nonempty and path-connected.

*Proof.* (a) Choose a smooth family of vector fields  $X_{\sigma}$  on V satisfying

$$\iota_{X_{\sigma}}\omega_{x} = \lambda_{\sigma}, \quad x \in \Sigma_{\sigma}.$$
 (1)

Since  $\Sigma_{\sigma}$  is compact the flow  $\phi_{X_{\sigma}}^{r}$  exists locally near  $\Sigma_{\sigma}$ . We observe that plugging in the Reeb vector field into (1) implies that  $X_{\sigma}$  is transverse to  $\Sigma_{\sigma}$ . Hence we can define a smooth family of diffeomorphisms  $\tilde{\psi}_{\sigma} : (-\tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}, \tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}) \times \Sigma_{\sigma} \to V$  for  $\tilde{\rho}_{\sigma} > 0$  by the formula

$$\tilde{\psi}_{\sigma}(r,x) = \phi_{X_{\sigma}}^{r}(x), \quad (r,x) \in (-\tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}, \tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}) \times \Sigma_{\sigma}.$$

We abbreviate

$$\omega_{\sigma} = \omega_{\Sigma_{\sigma}} + d(r\lambda_{\sigma}).$$

Perhaps after shrinking  $\tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}$  it follows that  $\omega_{\sigma}$  is a symplectic structure on  $(-\tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}, \tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}) \times \Sigma_{\sigma}$ . Moreover, it follows from (1) that  $\omega_{\sigma}$  and  $\tilde{\psi}_{\sigma}^* \omega$  agree at points of  $\{0\} \times \Sigma_{\sigma}$ . Applying Moser's argument, see for example [51, Lemma

3.14], we find a smooth family of  $\rho_{\sigma} > 0$  and a smooth family of embeddings  $\phi_{\sigma} : (-\rho_{\sigma}, \rho_{\sigma}) \times \Sigma_{\sigma} \to (-\tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}, \tilde{\rho}_{\sigma}) \times \Sigma_{\sigma}$  satisfying

$$\phi_{\sigma}|_{\{0\}\times\Sigma_{\sigma}} = \mathrm{id}, \quad \phi_{\sigma}^* \tilde{\psi}_{\sigma}^* \omega = \omega_{\sigma}.$$

Now set

$$\psi_{\sigma} = \tilde{\psi}_{\sigma} \circ \phi_{\sigma}.$$

Then  $(\rho_{\sigma}, \psi_{\sigma})$  lies in  $\mathcal{T}(\{\Sigma_{\sigma}\})$ . In particular,  $\mathcal{T}(\{\Sigma_{\sigma}\})$  is nonempty.

(b) In view of part (a),  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma)$  is nonempty. To prove that it is path-connected we first show that for each  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega_{\Sigma})$  the space  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  is path-connected. Let  $(\rho_1, \psi_1), (\rho_2, \psi_2) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda)$ . By hypothesis,

$$\omega_{\lambda} = \omega|_{\Sigma} + d(r\lambda)$$

is symplectic on  $U := (-\rho, \rho)$  for some  $\rho > \max(\rho_1, \rho_2)$ . There exist neighbourhoods  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  of  $\{0\} \times \Sigma$  in U such that  $\psi_2^{-1} \circ \psi_1 : U_1 \to U_2$  is an isomorphism and

$$(\psi_2^{-1} \circ \psi_1)^* \omega_\lambda |_{U_2} = \omega_\lambda |_{U_1}$$

Note further that

$$\psi_2^{-1} \circ \psi_1|_{\{0\} \times \Sigma} = id.$$

Hence after choosing  $U_1$  even smaller we can in a Weinstein neighbourhood identify the graph  $\Gamma_{\psi_2^{-1}\circ\psi_1}\subset (U\times U,\omega_\lambda\oplus-\omega_\lambda)$  with an open subset of the graph  $\Gamma_\sigma\subset T^*U$  of a closed one-form  $\sigma$  on U. Considering the homotopy of graphs  $\Gamma_{t\sigma}$  for  $t\in[0,1]$  we find an  $\epsilon>0$  and a path in  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma,\lambda)$  between  $(\epsilon,\psi_1|_{(-\epsilon,\epsilon)\times\Sigma})$  and  $(\epsilon,\psi_2|_{(-\epsilon,\epsilon)\times\Sigma})$ . Now concatenating this path with shrinking paths between  $(\rho_1,\psi_1)$  and  $(\epsilon,\psi_1|_{(-\epsilon,\epsilon)\times\Sigma})$  as well as between  $(\rho_2,\psi_2)$  and  $(\epsilon,\psi_2|_{(-\epsilon,\epsilon)\times\Sigma})$  we obtain a path between  $(\rho_1,\psi_1)$  and  $(\rho_2,\psi_2)$ . This proves that for fixed  $\lambda\in\Lambda(\Sigma,\omega_\Sigma)$  the space  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma,\lambda)$  is path-connected.

Now assume more generally that  $(\rho_0, \psi_0), (\rho_1, \psi_1) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma)$ . Then there exist  $\lambda_0, \lambda_1 \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega_\sigma)$  such that

$$(\rho_0, \psi_0) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda_0), \quad (\rho_1, \psi_1) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda_1).$$

Since we have already seen that  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda_0)$  and  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda_1)$  are path-connected it suffices to connect arbitrary elements in these spaces by a path in  $\mathcal{T}(\Sigma)$ . To do that we make use of Lemma 2.4 giving us a path  $\lambda_{\sigma}$  in  $\Lambda(\Sigma, \omega_{\Sigma})$  connecting  $\lambda_0$  and  $\lambda_1$ . Hence we can apply part (a) to the stable homotopy  $(\Sigma, \lambda_{\sigma})$ . This proves the proposition.

**Contact structures.** A Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is called *contact* if there exists a 1-form  $\lambda$  such that  $d\lambda = \omega$  and  $\lambda \wedge \omega^{n-1} > 0$ . In particular,  $\lambda$  is a stabilizing 1-form and  $\lambda$  is a (positive) *contact form*, i.e.  $\lambda \wedge (d\lambda)^{n-1} > 0$ . Note that  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  can be contact only if  $\omega$  is exact.

Sullivan's theory in [67] also provides a necessary and sufficient condition for an exact Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  being contact. Fix a positive vector field R

generating  $\ker \omega$ . Every Borel probability measure  $\mu$  on  $\Sigma$  invariant under the flow of R gives rise to a 1-current via

$$\langle \mu, \beta \rangle = \int_{\Sigma} \beta(R) d\mu, \qquad \beta \in \Omega^{1}(\Sigma).$$

We say  $\mu$  is exact if it is exact as a 1-current, i.e.  $\langle \mu, \beta \rangle = 0$  for all closed 1-forms  $\beta$ .

**Theorem 2.7** (McDuff [50]). An exact Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is non-contact if and only if there exists a nontrivial exact positive invariant Borel measure  $\mu$  such that  $\langle \mu, \alpha \rangle = 0$  for some (and hence every) 1-form  $\alpha$  with  $d\alpha = \omega$ .

The simplest obstruction to the contact property arises if  $\mu$  is supported on a closed orbit: If there exists a null-homologous closed orbit  $\gamma$  of ker  $\omega$  such that  $\int_{\gamma} \alpha = 0$  for a primitive  $\alpha$  of  $\omega$ , then  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is non-contact.

The following immediate consequence of the theorem will be useful below.

Corollary 2.8. An exact Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is non-contact provided there exist two nontrivial exact invariant Borel measures  $\mu_{\pm}$  such that  $\langle \mu_{+}, \alpha \rangle \geq 0$  and  $\langle \mu_{-}, \alpha \rangle \leq 0$  for some (and hence every) 1-form  $\alpha$  with  $d\alpha = \omega$ .

*Proof.* For  $\mu_{\pm}$  as in the corollary, some positive linear combination  $\mu = a_{+}\mu_{+} + a_{-}\mu_{-}$  satisfies the condition in Theorem 2.7.

A particular invariant measure is given by the *Liouville measure* associated to a Hamiltonian structure  $(\Sigma, \omega, R)$  with a chosen vector field R generating  $\ker \omega$ . It is defined by the unique volume form  $\mu \in \Omega^{2n-1}(\Sigma)$  satisfying

$$i_R \mu = \frac{\omega^{n-1}}{(n-1)!}.$$

**Lemma 2.9.** Consider a twisted cotangent bundle  $(T^*M, \omega = dp \wedge dq + \tau^*\sigma)$  with a convex Hamiltonian  $H(q,p) = \frac{1}{2}|p|^2 + U(q)$  as in the Introduction. If  $M \neq \mathbb{T}^2$ , then on every regular level set  $(\Sigma_k = H^{-1}(k), \omega|_{\Sigma_k}, R = X_H)$  the Liouville measure is exact as a current.

*Proof.* We claim that  $\omega^{n-1}|_{\Sigma_k}$  is exact if  $M \neq \mathbb{T}^2$ . To see this, let  $\theta := p \, dq$  be the Liouville form and compute

$$\omega^{n-1} = (d\theta + \tau^*\sigma)^{n-1} = (d\theta)^{n-1} + (n-1)\tau^*\sigma \wedge (d\theta)^{n-2}.$$

On the right-hand side the first term is exact. For  $n \geq 3$  the second term is exact as well and the claim follows, so it remains to consider the case n=2. If  $k < \max U$  the projection  $\tau_k := \tau|_{\Sigma_k} \colon \Sigma_k \to M$  is not surjective, so  $\sigma$  is exact

on the image of  $\tau_k$  and the claim follows. If  $k > \max U$  the Gysin sequence of the circle bundle  $\tau_k \colon \Sigma_k \to M$  yields

$$H^0(M;\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\cup e} H^2(M;\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\tau_k^*} H^2(\Sigma_k;\mathbb{R}).$$

where e is the Euler class of the cotangent bundle of M. If  $M \neq \mathbb{T}^2$  this Euler class is nonzero, so the first map is an isomorphism and  $\tau_k^*$  the zero map. This proves the claim.

Now let  $\Theta$  be a primitive of  $\omega^{n-1}|_{\Sigma_k}$  and  $\beta \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_k)$  be closed. Then

$$(n-1)!\beta(R)\mu = (n-1)!\beta \wedge i_R\mu = \beta \wedge \omega^{n-1}|_{\Sigma_k} = \beta \wedge d\Theta = -d(\beta \wedge \Theta)$$

is exact, so its integral over  $\Sigma_k$  vanishes. This proves exactness of  $\mu$  and hence the lemma.

The following immediate consequence of Lemma 2.9 will be used repeatedly in this paper.

**Corollary 2.10.** In the situation of Lemma 2.9, there exists no 1-form  $\lambda$  on  $\Sigma_k$  with  $d\lambda = 0$  and  $\lambda(R) > 0$ .

### 3 Tame hypersurfaces

In this section we introduce the notion of weakly tame hypersurfaces in a symplectic manifold and the notion of tameness for stable hypersurfaces. As the name suggests, tame stable hypersurfaces are also weakly tame. We further explain what a tame, stable homotopy is. In the forthcoming section 4 we then show how for weakly tame, stable hypersurfaces Rabinowitz Floer homology can be defined and that Rabinowitz Floer homology is invariant under tame, stable homotopies.

Given a closed hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectically aspherical symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$  we denote by  $X(\Sigma)$  the set of closed characteristics in  $\Sigma$  which are contractible in V. We define the function

$$\Omega \colon X(\Sigma) \to \mathbb{R}$$

by choosing for  $v \in X(\Sigma)$  a filling disk  $\bar{v}$  in V which exists since v is contractible in V and putting

$$\Omega(v) = \int \bar{v}^* \omega. \tag{2}$$

Note that since V is symplectically aspherical the function  $\Omega$  is well-defined independent of the choice of the filling disk. We refer to the function  $\Omega$  as the  $\omega$ -energy of a closed characteristic. For  $a \leq b$  we abbreviate

$$X_a^b(\Sigma) = \big\{ v \in X(\Sigma) : a \le \Omega(v) \le b \big\}.$$

The hypersurface  $\Sigma$  is called *weakly tame* if for each  $a \leq b$  the space  $X_a^b(\Sigma)$  is compact (with the topology of uniform convergence).

An example of weakly tame hypersurfaces are hypersurfaces of restricted contact type. Indeed if  $\omega = d\lambda$  is exact and the restriction  $\lambda|_{\Sigma}$  is a contact form on  $\Sigma$ , then each closed characteristic can be parametrised as a periodic orbit of the Reeb vector field  $R_{\lambda}$  and hence

$$\Omega(v) = \int \bar{v}^* \omega = \int v^* \lambda = T_{\lambda}(v),$$

where  $T_{\lambda}(v)$  is the period of v as a periodic orbit of the Reeb vector field  $R_{\lambda}$ . Therefore the theorem of Arzela-Ascoli implies that  $\Sigma$  is weakly tame. On the other hand an obstruction for being weakly tame is the existence of a closed characteristic of vanishing  $\omega$ -energy. Indeed, taking iterates of it we get a sequence of closed characteristics of vanishing  $\omega$ -energy having no convergent subsequence.

If the hypersurface  $\Sigma$  is stable we can define for each  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  another function

$$T_{\lambda} \colon X(\Sigma) \to (0, \infty), \quad v \mapsto \int v^* \lambda.$$

The function  $T_{\lambda}$  associates to v its period as a Reeb orbit of the Reeb vector field  $R_{\lambda}$ . We note that for two different  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  the functions  $T_{\lambda_1}$  and  $T_{\lambda_2}$  are proportional in the sense that there exist positive constants  $\underline{c}_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2}$  and  $\overline{c}_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2}$  such that

$$\underline{c}_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2} T_{\lambda_2} \le T_{\lambda_1} \le \overline{c}_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2} T_{\lambda_2}. \tag{3}$$

Indeed, the Reeb vector fields  $R_{\lambda_1}$  and  $R_{\lambda_2}$  are pointing in the same direction at each point of  $\Sigma$  so that there exists a positive function  $f_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2} \in C^{\infty}(\Sigma,(0,\infty))$  such that the formula

$$R_{\lambda_1} = f_{\lambda_1, \lambda_2} R_{\lambda_2}$$

holds. Since  $\Sigma$  is compact the function  $f_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2}$  attains a positive maximum and a positive minimum on  $\Sigma$  and we set

$$\underline{c}_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2} = \frac{1}{\max f_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2}}, \quad \overline{c}_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2} = \frac{1}{\min f_{\lambda_1,\lambda_2}}$$

for which (3) holds.

A stable hypersurface is called *tame* if there exists  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  and a constant  $c_{\lambda}$  such that for all  $v \in X(\Sigma)$ 

$$T_{\lambda}(v) \le c_{\lambda} |\Omega(v)|.$$
 (4)

We remark that it follows from (4) and the theorem of Arzela-Ascoli that a tame stable hypersurface is weakly tame. We refer to the constant  $c_{\lambda}$  as a taming constant for  $\lambda$ . We note that if there exists a taming constant for one

 $\lambda_1 \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  then there exists also a taming constant for every other stabilizing one-form  $\lambda_2 \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$ . Indeed, it follows from (3) that

$$c_{\lambda_2} = \frac{c_{\lambda_1}}{\underline{c}_{\lambda_1, \lambda_2}}$$

is a taming constant for  $\lambda_2$ . We finally introduce the tameness condition for stable homotopies.

A stable homotopy  $(\Sigma_t, \lambda_t)$  for  $t \in [0, 1]$  is called *tame*, if there exists a taming constant c > 0 such that

$$T_{\lambda_t}(v) \le c|\Omega(v)|, \quad \forall \ t \in [0,1], \ \forall \ v \in X(\Sigma_t).$$

### 4 Rabinowitz Floer homology

Rabinowitz Floer homology as the Floer homology of Rabinowitz' action functional was, for the restricted contact type case, introduced by the first two authors in [12]. In this section we generalize as far as possible the construction of Rabinowitz Floer homology to the stable case. This generalization is not straightforward. The compactness proof for the moduli space of gradient flow lines has to be modified considerably in the stable case. The crucial point is the occurence of a second Liapunov functional on the moduli space of gradient flow lines which is defined via a stabilizing 1-form. One could define Rabinowitz Floer homology for a stabilized hypersurface by using a filtration from both action functionals. However, since the second action functional depends on the stabilizing form, such homology groups might depend on the stabilizing 1-form. To avoid this difficulty we only define Rabinowitz Floer homology in the case of weakly tame stable hypersurfaces, in which case this trouble does not occur.

As in the restricted contact type case the Rabinowitz Floer homology groups have the property that they vanish if the hypersurface is displaceable and that they coincide with the singular homology of the hypersurface in the case that there are no contractible Reeb orbits on the hypersurface. In particular, using Rabinowitz Floer homology one can recover a theorem due to F. Schlenk, that on displaceable stable hypersurfaces there always exists a contractible Reeb orbit. Schlenk's theorem actually does not need the weakly tame condition. And indeed, if one looks only at the local Rabinowitz Floer homology around the action value zero, the general compactness theorem for the moduli space of gradient flow lines of Rabinowitz action functional suffices, to recover Schlenk's theorem also in the not weakly tame case.

A further trouble in the stable case which one does not have to worry about in the restricted contact type case, is the difficulty that the stability condition is not open [15] and hence Rabinowitz action functional cannot be assumed to be generically Morse-Bott. We therefore have to introduce an additional perturbation which makes a generically perturbed Rabinowitz action functional

Morse. It is however not clear that compactness for the moduli space of gradient flow lines for the perturbed Rabinowitz action functional continues to hold. Nevertheless, one can partially overcome this trouble be a procedure which is somehow reminiscent of the Conley index in the finite dimensional case. For a fixed action window it is possible to choose the perturbation so small that one can get a boundary operator by counting only gradient flow lines of the perturbed action functional which are sufficiently close to the gradient flow lines of the unperturbed action functional. Since the perturbation depends on the action window the drawback of this construction is, that one cannot define the full Rabinowitz Floer chain complex by using Novikov sums as in [12]. Instead one first defines filtered Rabinowitz Floer homology groups and then takes their inverse and direct limits. Because inverse and direct limits do not necessarily commute one obtains in this way actually two types of Rabinowitz Floer homology groups which we denote by  $\overline{RFH}$  and RFH. One can show, see [13], that in the restricted contact type case the Rabinowitz Floer homology RFHas defined in [12] via Novikov sums coincides with  $\overline{RFH}$ . The two homology groups are connected by a canonical homomorphism

$$\kappa \colon \overline{RFH} \to \underline{RFH}.$$

It is an open question if  $\kappa$  is always an isomorphism. The results of [13] suggest that it should at least be surjective. But even that is not clear yet, since in [13] the first two authors made heavy use of a bidirect system of chain complexes which we do not have in the stable case.

The Rabinowitz Floer homology groups are invariant under tame, stable homotopies. We prove this via an adiabatic version of Floer's continuation homomorphism. For this we need a compactness theorem for gradient flow lines in the case that Rabinowitz action functional is also allowed to depend on time.

This section is organised in the following manner. In section 4.1 we recall the definition of Rabinowitz action functional, show how its critical points are given by Reeb orbits and derive the gradient flow equation.

In section 4.2 the main ingredient for the compactness proof of the moduli spaces of gradient flow lines is established. Rabinowitz action functional is a Lagrange multiplier action functional and the main difficulty is to obtain a uniform bound on the Lagrange multiplier along gradient flow lines. Once this bound is established, the compactness for the moduli spaces of gradient flow lines follows from standard arguments well-known in Floer theory.

In section 4.3 we give a new proof of Schlenk's theorem about the existence of a contractible Reeb orbit on a displaceable, stable hypersurface. This proof can also be used to derive the vanishing of Rabinowitz Floer homology for displaceable, weakly tame, stable hypersurfaces.

In section 4.4 we introduce a class of perturbations of Rabinowitz action functional and show that for a generic perturbation Rabinowitz action functional becomes Morse. We then explain how for a fixed action window one can find small perturbations such that the moduli space of gradient flow lines can be

written as the disjoint union of two closed parts where one part (which we refer to as the essential part) is compact. We then explain how the essential part can be used to define a boundary operator.

In section 4.5 we define the two Rabinowitz Floer homology groups  $\overline{RFH}$  and  $\underline{RFH}$  for weakly tame, stable hypersurfaces. We show that both homology groups vanish for displaceable hypersurfaces and that both homology groups coincide with the singular homology of the hypersurface in the case that the hypersurface carries no contractible Reeb orbit.

In section 4.6 we finally establish invariance of Rabinowitz Floer homology for tame, stable homotopies.

### 4.1 Rabinowitz action functional

We first give the general definition of Rabinowitz action functional and its gradient flow, postponing technical details to later subsections.

Consider a symplectically aspherical manifold  $(V, \omega)$  and a separating closed hypersurface  $\Sigma \subset V$ . Choose a Hamiltonian  $\bar{H}$  with  $\bar{H}^{-1}(0) = \Sigma$ . Such Hamiltonians exist since  $\Sigma$  is assumed to be separating. Denote by  $\mathcal{L} \subset C^{\infty}(S^1, V)$  the component of contractible loops in the free loop space of V. Rabinowitz action functional

$$\mathcal{A}^{ar{H}} \colon \mathcal{L} imes \mathbb{R} o \mathbb{R}$$

is defined as

$$\mathcal{A}^{\bar{H}}(v,\eta) := \int_0^1 \bar{v}^* \omega - \eta \int_0^1 \bar{H}(v(t)) dt, \quad (v,\eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R},$$

where  $\bar{v} \colon D^2 \to V$  is an extension of v to the disk. One may think of  $\mathcal{A}^{\bar{H}}$  as the Lagrange multiplier functional of the unperturbed action functional of classical mechanics also studied in Floer theory to a mean value constraint of the loop. The critical points of  $\mathcal{A}^{\bar{H}}$  satisfy

$$\partial_t v(t) = \eta X_{\bar{H}}(v(t)), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}, 
\bar{H}(v(t)) = 0.$$
(5)

Here we used the fact that  $\bar{H}$  is invariant under its Hamiltonian flow.

It is also useful to consider Rabinowitz action functional for "weakly" time dependent Hamiltonians. Here weakly means that the Hamiltonian is just the product of a time independent Hamiltonian with a function depending only on time, i.e.

$$H(t,y)=\chi(t)\bar{H}(y),\quad y\in V,\ t\in S^1.$$

Normalizing, we assume in addition that

$$\int_0^1 \chi(t)dt = 1. \tag{6}$$

We define Rabinowitz action functional  $\mathcal{A}^H$  as before with  $\bar{H}$  replaced by H. The critical point equation then becomes

$$\frac{\partial_t v(t) = \eta \chi(t) X_{\bar{H}}(v(t)), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}, \\ \bar{H}(v(t)) = 0, \qquad (7)$$

i.e. the new critical points can just be obtained by reparametrisation of the previous ones. Moreover, the action value remains constant.

We next describe a class of metrics on  $\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$ . Pick a smooth  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure J on V. For such a J we define a metric m on  $\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  for  $(v, \eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  and  $(\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2) \in T_{(v,\eta)}(\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  by

$$m((\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2)) = \int_0^1 \omega(\hat{v}_1, J(v)\hat{v}_2) dt + \hat{\eta}_1 \cdot \hat{\eta}_2.$$

The gradient of  $\mathcal{A}^H$  with respect to this metric is given by

$$\nabla \mathcal{A}^H = \nabla_m \mathcal{A}^H = \begin{pmatrix} -J(v) \left( \partial_t v - \eta X_H(v) \right) \\ -\int_0^1 H(t, v(\cdot, t)) dt \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus (positive) gradient flow lines of  $\nabla \mathcal{A}^H$  are solutions  $(v, \eta) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R} \times S^1, V \times \mathbb{R})$  of the following problem

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \partial_s v + J(v)(\partial_t v - \eta X_H(v)) = 0\\ \partial_s \eta + \int_0^1 H(t, v(\cdot, t) dt = 0. \end{array} \right\} \tag{8}$$

The boundary operator of Rabinowitz Floer homology counts gradient flow lines connecting critical points of  $\mathcal{A}^H$ . In order to prove that this is well defined one has to show that the moduli spaces of gradient flow line are compact modulo breaking. There are three difficulties one has to solve.

- An  $L^{\infty}$ -bound on the loop  $v \in \mathcal{L}$ .
- An  $L^{\infty}$ -bound on the Lagrange multiplier  $\eta \in \mathbb{R}$ .
- An  $L^{\infty}$ -bound on the derivatives of the loop v.

The first and the third point are standard problems in Floer theory one knows how to deal with: The  $L^{\infty}$ -bound for the loop follows from suitable assumptions on  $(V, \omega)$  such as convexity at infinity or geometrical boundedness, and the derivatives can be controlled if V is symplectically aspherical, meaning that  $\omega$  vanishes on  $\pi_2(V)$ , and hence there is no bubbling of pseudo-holomorphic spheres.

The new feature is the bound on the Lagrange multiplier  $\eta$ , which can only hold under some additional hypothesis on the hypersurface  $\Sigma$ . It was derived in [12] for  $\Sigma$  of restricted contact type. In the next subsection we will bound the Lagrange multiplier provided  $\Sigma$  is stable.

### 4.2 Bound on the Lagrange multiplier

In this section we discuss the bound on the Lagrange multiplier. In the restricted contact case this was carried out in [12]. There the first two authors of this paper used the fact that in the restricted contact case the action value of Rabinowitz action functional at a critical point coincides with the Lagrange multiplier. This is not true anymore in the stable case. Nevertheless, using stability one can define a modified Rabinowitz action functional whose action value at critical points still is given by the Lagrange multiplier. However, the modified action is not necessarily a Liapunov function for gradient flow lines, so that the proof in [12] cannot be mimicked in the stable case by just using the modified version. The crucial observation is that the difference of the two action functionals is actually a Liapunov function for gradient flow lines and this fact can be used to still get a bound on the Lagrange multiplier.

In section 4.2.1 we explain how the additional Liapunov functional arises and why it can be used to get the bound on the Lagrange multiplier. Technical details of section 4.2.1 are postponed to section 4.2.2. In section 4.2.4 we also derive a bound on the Lagrange multiplier for gradient flow lines, when the Rabinowitz action functional itself is allowed to depend on time. For this we need a short stable homotopy. Using the notion of the stable pseudodistance, explained in section 4.2.3, we can make precise what "short" means.

#### 4.2.1 A second Liapunov function for gradient flow lines

From now on we assume that  $\Sigma \subset V$  is a stable hypersurface. We first explain the general strategy to obtain a bound on the Lagrange multiplier. Assume that  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma,\omega)$  and let  $R=R_\lambda$  be the Reeb vector field of the stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda$ . We will use Hamiltonians  $\bar{H}$  such that  $\bar{H}^{-1}(0)=\Sigma$  and in addition  $X_{\bar{H}}=R$  along  $\Sigma$ . To obtain the bound on the Lagrange multiplier we also have to choose  $\bar{H}$  carefully outside the stable hypersurface. For that we have to assume that the stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda$  is small enough, but we will give a detailed explanation of this construction later in section 4.2.2. The additional condition implies that the critical point equations (7) are equivalent to

$$\partial_t v(t) = \eta \chi(t) R(v(t)), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}, \\ v(t) \in \Sigma, \qquad t \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z},$$
 (9)

i.e. v is up to reparametrisation a periodic orbit of the Reeb vector field on  $\Sigma$  with period  $\eta$ . <sup>3</sup>

The bound on the Lagrange multiplier is derived by comparing the Rabinowitz action functional to a different action functional. This modified version of Rabinowitz action functional is obtained using an extension of the stabilizing 1-form

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>The period  $\eta$  may be negative or zero. We refer in this paper to Reeb orbits moved backwards as Reeb orbits with negative period and to constant orbits as Reeb orbits of period zero.

 $\lambda$  on  $\Sigma$  to a compactly supported 1-form  $\beta_{\lambda}$  on V. We also postpone the precise construction of  $\beta_{\lambda}$ . But given  $\beta_{\lambda}$  we define the auxiliary action functional  $\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H \colon \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H(v,\eta) := \int_0^1 \bar{v}^* d\beta_\lambda - \eta \int_0^1 H(t,v(t)) dt,$$

We will further use the difference of the two Rabinowitz action functionals

$$\mathcal{A} := \mathcal{A}^H - \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H \colon \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}, \qquad (v, \eta) \mapsto \int_0^1 \bar{v}^* (\omega - d\beta_{\lambda}).$$

Note that  $\mathcal{A}(v,\eta)$  is in fact independent of  $\eta$ . We further use an  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure J on V which has a special form on a stable tubular neighbourhood of  $\Sigma$ , see section 4.2.2. For that J we consider the following two bilinear forms on the tangent bundle  $T(\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$ :

$$m\Big((\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2)\Big) := \int_0^1 \omega(\hat{v}_1, J\hat{v}_2) dt + \hat{\eta}_1 \hat{\eta}_2,$$
$$\widehat{m}\Big((\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2)\Big) := \int_0^1 d\beta_{\lambda}(\hat{v}_1, J\hat{v}_2) dt + \hat{\eta}_1 \hat{\eta}_2.$$

Here the bilinear form m (which has already been defined in the previous subsection) is positive definite. The main point in the choice of H,  $\beta_{\lambda}$  and J is to make sure that the following Proposition becomes true.

**Proposition 4.1.** If  $(v, \eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  and  $(\hat{v}, \hat{\eta}) \in T_{(v,\eta)}(\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  then the following two assertions hold

(i) 
$$d\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H(v,\eta)(\hat{v},\hat{\eta}) = \widehat{m}\Big(\nabla_m \mathcal{A}^H(v,\eta),(\hat{v},\hat{\eta})\Big),$$

(ii) 
$$(m-\widehat{m})((\widehat{v},\widehat{\eta}),(\widehat{v},\widehat{\eta})) \geq 0.$$

We prove Proposition 4.1 in section 4.2.2. Assertion (i) might be interpreted as

$$\nabla_{\widehat{m}}\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H = \nabla_m \mathcal{A}^H.$$

However, we point out that the gradient with respect to the bilinear form  $\widehat{m}$  is not uniquely determined since  $\widehat{m}$  is not positive definite. We can use Proposition 4.1 to show that the difference action functional  $\mathcal{A}$  is a Liapunov function for the gradient flow lines of  $\mathcal{A}^H$ .

**Corollary 4.2.** The functional A is non-decreasing along gradient flow lines of Rabinowitz action functional.

*Proof.* Let  $w \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  be a gradient flow line of Rabinowitz action functional, i.e., a solution of

$$\partial_s w(s) = \nabla_m \mathcal{A}^H(w(s)), \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We estimate using Proposition 4.1

$$\frac{d}{ds}\mathcal{A}(w) = d\mathcal{A}^{H}(w)(\partial_{s}w) - d\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{H}(w)(\partial_{s}w) 
= m\Big(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{H}(w), \nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{H}(w)\Big) - \widehat{m}\Big(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{H}(w), \nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{H}(w)\Big) 
\geq 0.$$

This concludes the proof of the Corollary.

Since the restriction of  $\beta_{\lambda}$  to  $\Sigma$  equals  $\lambda$  we obtain using Stokes' theorem and (9) the following period-action equality for critical points  $(v, \eta)$  of  $\mathcal{A}^H$ ,

$$\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H(v,\eta) = \eta.$$

An elaboration of this observation is the second assertion of the following Lemma which might be thought of as a period-action inequality for almost Reeb orbits. For the statement of the Lemma we use the abbreviation

$$||H||_{\infty} = \int_{0}^{1} \sup_{V} |H| dt = ||\bar{H}||_{\infty}.$$

**Lemma 4.3.** If the stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda$  is small enough in the  $C^0$ -topology, then for every  $\epsilon > 0$  and for every  $\gamma \in [0,1)$  we can choose the Hamiltonian  $\bar{H}$  in such a way that for every  $\chi$  satisfying (6) the following two conditions hold for  $H = \chi \bar{H}$ .

- (i)  $||H||_{\infty} \leq \gamma + \epsilon$ .
- (ii) For  $(v, \eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  the following implication holds

$$||\nabla \mathcal{A}^H(v,\eta)|| \leq \frac{2\gamma}{3} \quad \Rightarrow \quad |\eta| \leq \frac{1}{1-\gamma} \Big| \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H(v,\eta) \Big| + \frac{2\gamma}{3(1-\gamma)}.$$

Here the norms and the gradient are taken with respect to m.

*Proof.* The Lemma follows from Lemma 4.7 below.

**Proposition 4.4.** Suppose that the stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda$  is small enough and H is as in Lemma 4.3 for  $\epsilon > 0$  and  $\gamma \in (0, 1 - \epsilon]$ . Assume that  $w = (v, \eta) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  is a gradient flow line of  $\nabla \mathcal{A}^H$  for which there exist  $a \leq b$  such that

$$\mathcal{A}^{H}(w)(s), \ \mathcal{A}(w)(s) \in [a, b], \quad \forall \ s \in \mathbb{R}.$$
 (10)

Then the  $L^{\infty}$ -norm of  $\eta$  is bounded by

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \le \left(\frac{9-5\gamma}{4\gamma(1-\gamma)}\right)(b-a) + \frac{2\gamma}{3(1-\gamma)} + \frac{9(b-a)}{4\gamma^2}\epsilon.$$

*Proof.* For  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  we set

$$\tau(\sigma) = \inf \left\{ \tau \ge 0 : \left| \left| \nabla \mathcal{A}^H \left( w(\sigma + \tau) \right) \right| \right| \le \frac{2\gamma}{3} \right\}.$$

To obtain a bound on  $\tau(\sigma)$  we estimate using the gradient flow equation and (10)

$$b - a \geq \mathcal{A}^{H}(w(\sigma)) - \mathcal{A}^{H}(w(\sigma + \tau(\sigma)))$$

$$= \int_{\sigma}^{\sigma + \tau(\sigma)} \frac{d}{ds} \Big( \mathcal{A}^{H}(w) \Big) ds$$

$$= \int_{\sigma}^{\sigma + \tau(\sigma)} d\mathcal{A}^{H}(w) (\partial_{s} w) ds$$

$$= \int_{\sigma}^{\sigma + \tau(\sigma)} ||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{H}(w)||^{2} ds$$

$$\geq \left(\frac{2\gamma}{3}\right)^{2} \tau(\sigma)$$

from which we deduce

$$\tau(\sigma) \le \frac{9(b-a)}{4\gamma^2}.$$

Furthermore, for every  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  the modified version of Rabinowitz action functional can be estimated from above using (10) again by

$$|\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H(w(s))| = |\mathcal{A}^H(w(s)) - \mathcal{A}(w(s))| \le b - a.$$

The above two inequalities together with Lemma 4.3 and the equation  $\partial_s \eta(s) = -\int_0^1 H(t, v(s, t)) dt$  following from the gradient flow equation imply

$$|\eta(\sigma)| \le |\eta(\sigma + \tau(\sigma))| + \int_{\sigma}^{\sigma + \tau(\sigma)} |\partial_s \eta(s)| ds$$

$$\le \frac{1}{1 - \gamma} (b - a) + \frac{2\gamma}{3(1 - \gamma)} + (\gamma + \epsilon)\tau(\sigma)$$

$$\le \left(\frac{9 - 5\gamma}{4\gamma(1 - \gamma)}\right) (b - a) + \frac{2\gamma}{3(1 - \gamma)} + \frac{9(b - a)}{4\gamma^2} \epsilon.$$

Since  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  was arbitrary the proposition follows.

Corollary 4.5. Suppose that the stabilizing 1-form is small enough. Then for given  $a \leq b$  the Hamiltonian  $\bar{H} = \bar{H}(b-a)$  can be chosen in such a way that for every  $\chi$  satisfying (6) and for every gradient flow line  $w = (v, \eta) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  of  $\nabla \mathcal{A}^H$  which satisfies (10) the  $L^{\infty}$ -norm of  $\eta$  is bounded by

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \le \left(\frac{5}{2}\right)^2 (b-a) + 2.$$

*Proof.* Choose  $\gamma = \frac{3}{5}$  and  $\epsilon \leq \frac{4}{25(b-a)}$  and let  $\bar{H} = \bar{H}(b-a)$  be the corresponding Hamiltonian. With these choices the Corollary follows from Proposition 4.4.  $\square$ 

Remark. The Corollary is somehow the optimal Corollary from Proposition 4.4, since the function

$$f \in C^{\infty}((0,1), \mathbb{R}), \quad \gamma \mapsto \frac{9 - 5\gamma}{4\gamma(1 - \gamma)}$$

attains at the point  $\gamma = \frac{3}{5}$  its unique minimum.

### 4.2.2 Admissible tuples

In this section we prove Proposition 4.1 and Lemma 4.3.

For  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  denote by  $\mathcal{I}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  the space of  $\omega_{\Sigma}$ -compatible complex structures on the bundle  $\xi_{\lambda} = \ker \lambda$ . Note that actually  $\mathcal{I}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  only depends on the ray of  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  since  $\xi_{\sigma\lambda} = \xi_{\lambda}$  for  $\sigma > 0$ . For  $I \in \mathcal{I}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  we introduce the following quantity

$$\kappa(\lambda, I) := \sup_{\substack{w \in \xi_{\lambda} \\ w \neq 0}} \frac{|d\lambda(w, Iw)|}{\omega(w, Iw)} \ge 0.$$

We define the upper semicontinuous function

$$\kappa \colon \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega) \to [0, \infty), \quad \lambda \mapsto \inf_{I \in \mathcal{I}(\Sigma, \lambda)} \kappa(\lambda, I).$$

Note that  $\kappa$  has the following scaling behaviour

$$\kappa(\sigma\lambda) = \sigma\kappa(\lambda), \quad \sigma > 0, \ \lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega).$$

Recall from section 2 the notion of a stable tubular neighbourhood. We further introduce the lower semicontinuous function

$$\varrho \colon \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega) \to (0, \infty)$$

measuring the size of stable tubular neighbourhoods which is defined for  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  by

$$\varrho(\lambda) = \sup \{ \rho : (\rho, \psi) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda) \}.$$

The scaling behaviour for the function  $\varrho$  is given by

$$\varrho(\sigma\lambda) = \frac{1}{\sigma}\varrho(\lambda).$$

**Definition.** A stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  is called *small* if

$$\max \left\{ \kappa(\lambda), \frac{1}{\rho(\lambda)} \right\} < 1.$$

We abbreviate by  $\Lambda_s(\Sigma,\omega) \subset \Lambda(\Sigma,\omega)$  the subset of small stabilizing 1-forms.

*Remark.* It follows from the scaling behaviour of the functions  $\kappa$  and  $\varrho$  that for every  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  there exists  $\tau > 0$  such that  $\tau \lambda$  is small.

We introduce three spaces of functions. Given  $\rho > 1$  the first space

$$\mathcal{F}_1(\rho) \subset C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$$

consists of functions  $\phi$  for which there exists  $\rho_0 \in (1, \rho)$  such that the following conditions are met

$$\begin{cases}
 \phi(r) = r + 1, & r \in [-\rho_0, \rho_0] \\
 \phi'(r) \le 1, & r \in \mathbb{R} \\
 \operatorname{supp}(\phi) \subset (-\rho, \rho).
 \end{cases}$$
(11)

Given  $\gamma \geq 0$  and  $\epsilon > 0$  the second space

$$\mathcal{F}_2(\gamma,\epsilon) \subset C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R},\mathbb{R})$$

consists of functions h for which the following holds

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll}
h(r) = r, & r \in [-\gamma, \gamma] \\
0 \le h'(r) \le 1 + \epsilon, & r \in \mathbb{R} \\
h(r) = \gamma + \epsilon & r \ge \gamma + \epsilon \\
h(r) = -\gamma - \epsilon & r \le -\gamma - \epsilon
\end{array} \right\}.$$
(12)

The third space

$$\mathcal{F}_3 \subset C^{\infty}(S^1, \mathbb{R})$$

consists of functions  $\chi \in C^{\infty}(S^1, \mathbb{R})$  satisfying

$$\int_0^1 \chi(t)dt = 1.$$

*Remark.* All three spaces  $\mathcal{F}_1(\rho)$ ,  $\mathcal{F}_2(\gamma, \epsilon)$  and  $\mathcal{F}_3$  are convex and nonempty.

**Definition.** A stable tubular neighbourhood  $\tau = (\rho, \psi) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  is called *large* if  $\rho > 1$ . We abbreviate by  $\mathcal{T}_{\ell}(\Sigma, \lambda) \subset \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  the subset of large stable tubular neighbourhoods.

We remark that if  $\lambda$  is a small stabilizing 1-form, then the space of large tubular neighbourhoods is not empty by definition of small.

**Definition.** Given  $\epsilon > 0$  and  $\gamma \in [0, 1 - \epsilon]$  a  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple for the stable hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in V

$$\alpha = (\lambda, \tau, \phi, h, \chi)$$

consists of  $\lambda \in \Lambda_s(\Sigma, \omega)$ ,  $\tau = (\rho, \psi) \in \mathcal{T}_{\ell}(\Sigma, \lambda)$ ,  $\phi \in \mathcal{F}_1(\rho)$ ,  $h \in \mathcal{F}_2(\gamma, \epsilon)$ , and  $\chi \in \mathcal{F}_3$ .

Remark. We sometimes omit the reference to  $\gamma$  and  $\epsilon$  and refer to a  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple as an admissible quintuple.

We abbreviate by

$$\mathfrak{A}^{\gamma,\epsilon} = \mathfrak{A}^{\gamma,\epsilon}(\Sigma, V)$$

the space of all  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuples for  $\Sigma$  in V. We denote by

$$\pi: \mathfrak{A}^{\gamma,\epsilon} \to \Lambda_s(\Sigma,\omega)$$

the projection to the first factor. Note that for each  $\lambda \in \Lambda_s(\Sigma, \omega)$  the fiber

$$\mathfrak{A}_{\lambda}^{\gamma,\epsilon} = \pi^{-1}(\lambda)$$

is nonempty. As we have seen in Corollary 4.5 and the Remark following it the somehow optimal choice to bound the Lagrange multiplier is  $\gamma = \frac{3}{5}$ . Hence for  $\epsilon \in (0, \frac{2}{5}]$  we set

$$\mathfrak{A}^{\epsilon} = \mathfrak{A}^{\frac{3}{5},\epsilon}$$

We further abbreviate

$$\mathfrak{A} = \bigcup_{\epsilon \in (0, \frac{2}{5}]} \mathfrak{A}^{\epsilon}.$$

For a stable tubular neighbourhood  $\tau = (\rho, \psi) \in \mathcal{T}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  we denote by

$$U_{\tau} = \psi([-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma)$$

its image in V. We introduce a compactly supported 1-form on V for an admissible quintuple which extends the 1-form  $\lambda$  on  $\Sigma$  by

$$\beta_{\alpha}(y) = \begin{cases} \phi(r)\lambda(x) & y = \psi(x,r) \in U_{\tau} \\ 0 & y \in V \setminus U_{\tau}. \end{cases}$$

We will also sometimes suppress some of the dependencies of  $\beta_{\alpha}$  and write

$$\beta = \beta_{\lambda} = \beta_{\alpha}$$
.

Using the notion of admissible quintuples we are now in position to give the precise definition of the Rabinowitz action functional. For a  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple  $\alpha = (\lambda, \tau, \phi, h, \chi)$  with  $\tau = (\rho, \psi)$  we define  $H \in C^{\infty}(V \times S^1, \mathbb{R})$  for  $y \in V$  by the condition

$$H(y,t) = H_{\alpha}(y,t) = \left\{ \begin{array}{cc} \chi(t)h(r) & y = \psi(x,r) \in U_{\tau}, \ t \in S^1 \\ H(y,t) = \pm \chi(t)(\gamma + \epsilon) & y \in V \setminus U_{\tau}, \ t \in S^1. \end{array} \right.$$

For later reference we introduce the abbreviation

$$\bar{H}(y) = \int_0^1 H(t, y).$$

We sometimes use the notation

$$\mathcal{A}^{\alpha} = \mathcal{A}^{H}, \quad \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha} = \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{H}, \quad \mathcal{A}_{\alpha} = \mathcal{A}$$

to make the dependency of the three action functionals on the parameters explicit.

To define the bilinear form m and  $\widehat{m}$  we have to pick a suitable subspace of  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structures on V. We first make the following definition.

**Definition.** If  $\lambda \in \Lambda(\Sigma, \omega)$  then the space of *small*  $\omega_{\Sigma}$ -compatible almost complex structures on  $\xi_{\lambda}$  is defined as

$$\mathcal{I}_s(\Sigma, \lambda) = \{ I \in \mathcal{I}(\Sigma, \lambda) : \kappa(\lambda, I) \le 1 \}.$$

We note that if  $\lambda$  is small, then by definition the space  $\mathcal{I}_s(\Sigma,\lambda)$  is nonempty.

Recall from the introduction that a compatible almost complex structure J is called *geometrically bounded* if  $\omega(\cdot, J\cdot)$  is a complete Riemannian metric with bounded sectional curvature and injectivity radius bounded away from zero.

If  $\alpha$  is an admissible quintuple, and  $I \in \mathcal{I}_s(\Sigma, \pi(\alpha))$  we denote by  $\mathcal{J}(\alpha, I)$  the subspace of  $\omega$ -compatible geometrically bounded almost complex structures J on V which split on the stable tubular neighbourhood  $U_\tau = \psi([-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma) \subset V$  with respect to the decomposition

$$TV|_{U_{\tau}} = \xi_{\lambda} \oplus \xi_{\lambda}^{\omega}$$

as

$$J = \left(\begin{array}{cc} I & 0 \\ 0 & J_0 \end{array}\right)$$

where  $J_0$  is the standard complex structure on the symplectic complement of  $\xi_{\lambda}$  spanned by the Reeb vector field  $R_{\lambda}$  and  $\partial/\partial r$ . We further set

$$\mathcal{J}(\alpha) = \bigcup_{I \in \mathcal{I}_s(\Sigma, \pi(\alpha))} \mathcal{J}(\alpha, I).$$

The following Lemma is the main technical point to establish Proposition 4.1.

**Lemma 4.6.** Assume that  $\alpha = (\lambda, \tau, \phi, h, \chi)$  is an admissible quintuple for the stable hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in V, and  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$ . Then for every  $w \in TV$  the following estimate holds

$$d\beta_{\alpha}(w, Jw) \le \omega(w, Jw). \tag{13}$$

**Proof:** The inequality (13) is clear on the complement of the stable tubular neighbourhood  $U_{\tau}$  since there  $d\beta_{\alpha}$  vanishes and  $\omega(\cdot, J \cdot)$  is positive definite. For  $\tau = (\rho, \psi)$  we identify via  $\psi$  the neighbourhood  $U_{\tau}$  of  $\Sigma$  in V symplectically with  $[-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma$  and  $\omega = \omega_{\Sigma} + d(r\lambda)$ . Then the exterior derivative of  $\beta_{\alpha}$  is given by the formula

$$d\beta_{\alpha}|_{U_{\pi}} = \phi(r)d\lambda + \phi'(r)dr \wedge \lambda.$$

For  $u=(r,x)\in U_{\tau}$  and  $w\in T_{u}V$  we write  $w=w_{1}+w_{2}$  with respect to the decomposition  $TV|_{U_{\tau}}=\xi_{\lambda}\oplus\xi_{\lambda}^{\omega}$ . Note that since  $J\in\mathcal{J}(\alpha)$  there exists  $I\in\mathcal{I}_{s}(\Sigma,\lambda)$  such that

$$Jw = Iw_1 + J_0w_2.$$

We first observe that the following implications follow from (11)

$$\phi(r) \ge 0 \implies \phi(r) \le r+1, \quad \phi(r) \le 0 \implies \phi(r) \ge r+1.$$

Moreover, since  $I \in \mathcal{I}_s(\Sigma, \lambda)$  it follows that

$$|d\lambda(w_1, Iw_1)| \le \omega_{\Sigma}(w_1, Iw_1).$$

Using further  $\phi' \leq 1$  following from (11) we estimate

$$d\beta_{\alpha}(w, Jw) = \phi(r)d\lambda(w_{1}, Iw_{1}) + \phi'(r)dr \wedge \lambda(w_{2}, J_{0}w_{2})$$

$$\leq \max\{(r+1)d\lambda(w_{1}, Iw_{1}), 0\} + \omega(w_{2}, Jw_{2})$$

$$= \max\{rd\lambda(w_{1}, Iw_{1}) + \omega_{\Sigma}(w_{1}, Iw_{1}), 0\} + \omega(w_{2}, Jw_{2})$$

$$= \omega(w_{1}, Jw_{1}) + \omega(w_{2}, Jw_{2})$$

$$= \omega(w, Jw).$$

This proves the Lemma.

Proof of Proposition 4.1 The inequality (13) implies that

$$(m-\hat{m})\Big((\hat{v},\hat{\eta}),(\hat{v},\hat{\eta})\Big) = (m-\hat{m})\Big((\hat{v},0),(\hat{v},0)\Big) \ge 0.$$

Recall that the gradient of  $\mathcal{A}^H$  with respect to the metric m, defined by the equation

$$d\mathcal{A}^{H}(v,\eta)(\hat{v},\hat{\eta}) = m\Big(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{H}(v,\eta),(\hat{v},\hat{\eta})\Big),$$

is given by

$$\nabla_m \mathcal{A}^H(v,\eta) = \left(-J(v)\big(\dot{v} - \eta X_H(v)\big), \int_0^1 H(v)dt\right).$$

Here the Hamiltonian vector field  $X_H$ , defined by the equation  $dH = -i_{X_H}\omega$ , equals zero outside the region  $[-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma$  and on this region it is given by  $X_H = \chi(t)h'(r)R$ . Hence the stability condition  $i_R d\lambda = 0$  together with the first equality in (11) yields  $dH = -i_{X_H} d\beta_{\alpha}$ , which in turn implies that

$$d\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^H(v,\eta)(\hat{v},\hat{\eta}) = \hat{m}\Big(\nabla_m \mathcal{A}^H(v,\eta),(\hat{v},\hat{\eta})\Big).$$

This proves the Proposition.

We finally show Lemma 4.3 by proving the following Lemma whose proof is an elaboration of the proof of [12, Proposition 3.1]. To see how this Lemma actually implies Lemma 4.3 it only remains to note if  $\alpha$  is a  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple, then

$$||H_{\alpha}||_{\infty} = \gamma + \epsilon.$$

**Lemma 4.7.** Assume that  $\alpha = (\lambda, \tau, \phi, h, \chi)$  is a  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple with  $\tau = (\rho, \psi)$ . Then the following implication holds

$$||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)|| \leq \frac{2\gamma}{3} \quad \Rightarrow \quad |\eta| \leq \frac{1}{1-\gamma} \bigg( \Big| \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha}(v,\eta) \Big| + ||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)|| \bigg).$$

**Proof:** For  $\rho' \leq \rho$  we use the following notation for the stable tubular subneighbourhood of  $\tau$ 

$$\tau_{\rho'} = (\rho', \psi|_{[-\rho', \rho'] \times \Sigma}).$$

The Lemma is proved in two steps.

**Step 1:** Assume that v(t) for every  $t \in S^1$  is contained in the stable tubular neighbourhood  $U_{\tau_{\gamma}}$ . Then the inequality for  $|\eta|$  holds.

We first note that the Hamiltonian vector field and the one-form satisfy on  $U_{\tau_{\gamma}}$  the following relation

$$\beta_{\alpha}(X_H)|_{S^1 \times U_{\tau_{\gamma}}} = H|_{S^1 \times U_{\tau_{\gamma}}} + \chi.$$

In the following estimate we denote by  $|| ||_1$  and  $|| ||_2$  the  $L^1$  respectively  $L^2$ -norm on the circle.

$$\begin{aligned} |\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)| &= \left| \int_{0}^{1} v^{*} \beta_{\alpha} - \eta \int_{0}^{1} H(t,v(t)) dt \right| \\ &= \left| \eta \int_{0}^{1} \beta_{\alpha}(X_{H}(v)) dt + \int_{0}^{1} \beta_{\alpha} \left( \partial_{t} v - \eta X_{H}(v) \right) dt - \eta \int_{0}^{1} H(t,v(t)) dt \right| \\ &\geq \left| \eta \int_{0}^{1} \chi dt \right| - \left| \int_{0}^{1} \beta_{\alpha} \left( \partial_{t} v - \eta X_{H}(v) \right) dt \right| \\ &\geq |\eta| - (1+\gamma) ||\partial_{t} v - \eta X_{H}(v)||_{1} \\ &\geq |\eta| - (1+\gamma) ||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)||_{2} \\ &\geq |\eta| - (1+\gamma) ||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)||_{1} \end{aligned}$$

This proves Step 1.

**Step 2:** Assume that  $||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)|| \leq \frac{2\gamma}{3}$ . Then  $v(t) \in U_{\tau_{\gamma}}$  for every  $t \in S^1$ .

We argue by contradiction and exclude the following two cases.

Case 1: There exists  $t_0, t_1 \in S^1$  such that  $v(t_0) \in U_{\tau_{\frac{2\gamma}{3}}}$  and  $v(t_1) \in V \setminus U_{\tau_{\gamma}}$ .

Case 2: For all  $t \in S^1$  it holds that  $v(t) \in V \setminus U_{\tau_{\gamma}}$ .

We first observe that in Case 1 there exist two disjoint intervals  $I^1 = [s_0^1, s_1^1] \subset S^1$  and  $I^2 = [s_0^2, s_1^2]$  such that

$$v(s_0^1) \in \partial U_{\tau_\gamma}, \quad v(s_1^1) \in \partial U_{\tau_{\frac{2\gamma}{4}}}, \quad v(s_0^2) \in \partial U_{\tau_{\frac{2\gamma}{4}}}, \quad v(s_1^2) \in \partial U_{\tau_\gamma},$$

and

$$v(s) \in U_{\tau_{\gamma}} \setminus U_{\tau_{\frac{2\gamma}{3}}}, \ s \in I^1 \cup I^2.$$

Identifying  $U_{\tau_{\gamma}}$  with  $[-\gamma, \gamma] \times \Sigma$  we write for  $s \in I^1 \cup I^2$ 

$$v(s) = (r(s), u(s)) \in [-\gamma, \gamma] \times \Sigma.$$

We estimate

$$\begin{aligned} ||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta)|| &> & ||\partial_{t}v - \eta \chi X_{H}(v)||_{2} \\ &\geq & ||\partial_{t}v - \eta \chi X_{H}(v)||_{1} \\ &\geq & \int_{s_{0}^{1}}^{s_{1}^{1}} |\partial_{t}r(s)|ds + \int_{s_{0}^{2}}^{s_{1}^{2}} |\partial_{t}r(s)|ds \\ &\geq & \frac{2\gamma}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

This contradiction excludes Case 1.

To exclude Case 2 we estimate

$$||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}|| \ge \left| \int_{0}^{1} H(t, v(t)) dt \right| > \frac{2\gamma}{3}.$$

This inequality contradicts the assumption. Thus Step 2 and hence the Lemma follow.  $\hfill\Box$ 

### 4.2.3 The stable pseudo-distance

We later prove invariance of Rabinowitz Floer homology via an adiabatic homotopy argument. For that we need short homotopies of stable hypersurfaces. In order to say what "short" means we introduce the stable pseudo-distance.

We define the stable pseudo-distance as the infimum of the length of paths of stable quadruples between two stable hypersurfaces. To begin with here is the definition of a stable quadruple.

**Definition.** A stable quadruple in V

$$\mathfrak{S} = (\Sigma, \lambda, \tau, I)$$

consists of a stable hypersurface  $\Sigma \subset V$ , a small stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda \in \Lambda_s(\Sigma, \omega)$ , a large tubular neighbourhood  $\tau \in \mathcal{T}_{\ell}(\Sigma, \lambda)$  and a small  $\omega_{\Sigma}$ -compatible almost complex structure  $I \in \mathcal{I}_s(\Sigma, \lambda)$ . We also refer to a stable quadruple as above as a stable quadruple for the stable hypersurface  $\Sigma$ .

Let  $\mathfrak{P} = \{\mathfrak{S}_{\zeta}\} = \{(\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta}, \tau_{\zeta}, I_{\zeta})\}$  for  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  be a smooth path of stable quadruples. To be precise, we require for a smooth path  $\tau_{\zeta}$  of large stable tubular neighbourhoods that for a fixed  $\rho > 1$  we have a smooth family of maps

 $\psi_{\zeta} \colon [-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma \to V$  where  $\Sigma$  is a fixed manifold diffeomorphic to every  $\Sigma_{\zeta} \subset V$  such that  $\tau_{\zeta} = (\rho, \psi_{\zeta}) \in \mathcal{T}_{\ell}(\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta})$  for every  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$ . We associate to such a path a distance in the following way. For fixed  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  define a vector field on  $[-\rho, \rho] \times \Sigma$  by

$$X_{\psi_{\zeta}}(r,x) = \psi_{\zeta}^* \frac{d}{d\theta} \bigg|_{\theta=0} \psi_{\zeta+\theta}(r,x), \quad (r,x) \in [-\rho,\rho] \times \Sigma.$$

We refer to the expression

$$\mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta) =$$

$$\rho\Big(\max_{[-\rho,\rho]\times\Sigma_{\zeta}}\big|\omega(X_{\psi_{\zeta}},R_{\lambda_{\zeta}})\big|+\max_{[-\rho,\rho]\times\Sigma_{\zeta}}\big|d\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta}}}\lambda_{\zeta}(R_{\lambda_{\zeta}})\big|+\max_{\Sigma_{\zeta}}\big|\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta}(R_{\lambda_{\zeta}})\big|\Big)$$

as the speed of the path  $\mathfrak P$  at  $\zeta$ . We define the length of the path  $\mathfrak P$  by the formula

$$\Delta(\mathfrak{P}) = \int_0^1 \mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta) d\zeta.$$

The stable pseudo-distance between two stable hypersurfaces  $\Sigma_0$  and  $\Sigma_1$ 

$$\Delta(\Sigma_0, \Sigma_1) \in [0, \infty]$$

is defined as the infimum of the length of all paths of stable quadruples whose endpoints are stable quadruples for the stable hypersurfaces  $\Sigma_0$  respectively  $\Sigma_1$ . Here we understand that the stable pseudo-distance is infinite if there is no such path.

#### 4.2.4 The time-dependent case

In this section we establish a bound on the Lagrange multiplier for gradient flow lines, when the Rabinowitz action functional is allowed to depend itself on time.

Given two stable hypersurfaces  $\Sigma^-, \Sigma^+ \subset V$  and  $\alpha^{\pm} \in \mathfrak{A}(\Sigma^{\pm}, V)$  we denote by

$$\mathcal{H}(\alpha^-, \alpha^+) \subset C^{\infty}(V \times \mathbb{R}) \tag{14}$$

the space of time dependent Hamiltonians  $H \in C^{\infty}(V \times \mathbb{R})$  for which there exists R > 0 with the property that the family of Hamiltonians  $H_s = H(\cdot, s)$  becomes constant for  $|s| \geq R$ , and

$$H_s = H_{\alpha^{\pm}} \in C^{\infty}(V), \quad \pm s \ge R.$$

**Theorem 4.8.** For  $\epsilon > 0$  there exists a constant  $\Delta(\epsilon) > 0$  with the following property. Assume that  $\Sigma^-, \Sigma^+ \subset V$  are stable hypersurfaces such that

$$\Delta(\Sigma^-, \Sigma^+) \le \Delta(\epsilon).$$

Then there exist admissible quintuples  $\alpha^{\pm} \in \mathfrak{A}(\Sigma^{\pm}, V)$ , a time dependent Hamiltonian  $H \in \mathcal{H}(\alpha^{-}, \alpha^{+})$ , and a time-dependent metric  $m = \{m_{s}\}_{s \in \mathbb{R}}$  on  $\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  which is constant for |s| large such that the following holds true. For every  $a \leq b$ 

and for every flow line  $w=(v,\eta)\in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R},\mathcal{L}\times\mathbb{R})$  of the time dependent gradient  $\nabla_{m_s}\mathcal{A}^{H_s}$  which converges asymptotically  $\lim_{s\to\pm\infty}w(s)=w^{\pm}$  to critical points of  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha^{\pm}}$  satisfying

$$\mathcal{A}^{\alpha^{\pm}}(w^{\pm}), \mathcal{A}_{\alpha^{\pm}}(w^{\pm}) \in [a, b],$$

the following  $L^{\infty}$ -estimate holds for  $\eta$ 

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \le \left(\frac{5}{2} + \epsilon\right)^2 (b - a) + 2.$$

*Proof.* Assume that  $\Sigma^-, \Sigma^+$  are stable hypersurfaces whose stable pseudodistance is  $\Delta$ . Hence for every  $\epsilon_0 > 0$  there exists a path  $\mathfrak{P} = \mathfrak{P}_{\epsilon_0} = \{\mathfrak{S}_{\zeta}\}$  of stable quadruples  $\mathfrak{S}_{\zeta} = (\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta}, \tau_{\zeta}, I_{\zeta})$  for  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  such that

$$\Delta(\mathfrak{P}) \le \Delta + \epsilon_0$$

and

$$\Sigma_0 = \Sigma^-, \quad \Sigma_1 = \Sigma^+.$$

Let  $\rho > 1$  be such that  $\tau_{\zeta} = (\rho, \psi_{\zeta})$ . Recall from section 4.2.2 the spaces  $\mathcal{F}_1(\rho)$ ,  $\mathcal{F}_2(\gamma, \epsilon)$  and  $\mathcal{F}_3$ . Choose

$$\phi \in \mathcal{F}_1(\rho), \quad \chi \in \mathcal{F}_3.$$

Moreover, assume that  $\epsilon_0 \leq \frac{2}{5}$  and pick

$$h \in \mathcal{F}_2\left(\frac{3}{5}, \epsilon_0\right).$$

Then the family

$$\alpha_{\zeta} = (\lambda_{\zeta}, \tau_{\zeta}, \phi, h, \chi), \quad \zeta \in [0, 1]$$

is a smooth family of  $(\frac{3}{5}, \epsilon_0)$ -admissible quintuples for  $\Sigma_{\zeta}$ . Choose further a smooth function

$$\zeta_1 \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, [0, 1])$$

such that

$$0 \le \zeta_1'(s) \le 1, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}$$

and

$$\zeta_1(s) = \begin{cases} 0 & s \le -1\\ 1 & s \ge 1. \end{cases}$$

For R > 0 define  $\zeta_R \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, [0, 1])$  by

$$\zeta_R(s) = \zeta_1\left(\frac{s}{R}\right), \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Note that

$$||\zeta_R'|| \le \frac{1}{R}.$$

Set

$$\alpha^- = \alpha_0, \quad \alpha^+ = \alpha_1$$

and define

$$H^R \in \mathcal{H}(\alpha^-, \alpha^+)$$

by

$$H_s^R = H_{\alpha_{\zeta_R(s)}}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

To define the time-dependent metric  $m = \{m_s\}_{s \in \mathbb{R}}$  choose a smooth family

$$J_{\zeta} \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha_{\zeta}, I_{\zeta}).$$

If  $(v, \eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  and  $(\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2) \in T_{(v, \eta)}(\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  we set

$$m_s^R \Big( (\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2) \Big) := \int_0^1 \omega(\hat{v}_1, J_{\zeta_R(s)} \hat{v}_2) dt + \hat{\eta}_1 \hat{\eta}_2.$$

Now assume that  $w=(v,\eta)\in C^\infty(\mathbb{R},\mathcal{L}\times\mathbb{R})$  is a gradient flow line of  $\nabla_{m_s^R}\mathcal{A}^{H_s^R}$ . We show in four steps that for R large enough and  $\Delta$  small enough the required  $L^\infty$ -bound on  $\eta$  holds.

**Step 1:** For every  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  the following inequalities hold

$$a - 2(\Delta + \epsilon_0)||\eta||_{\infty} \le \mathcal{A}^{H_{\sigma}^R}(w(\sigma)) \le b + 2(\Delta + \epsilon_0)||\eta||_{\infty}. \tag{15}$$

We first claim that for any  $y \in V$  the estimate

$$\left|\partial_s \bar{H}_s^R(y)\right| \le 2\partial_s \zeta_R(s) \mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta_R(s)) \tag{16}$$

holds. This is clear if y does not lie in the stable tubular neighbourhood  $U_{\tau_{\zeta_R(s)}}$  since there  $\partial_s \bar{H}^R_s$  vanishes. On the other hand, if  $y = \psi_{\zeta_R(s)}(x,r) \in U_{\tau_{\zeta_R(s)}}$ , then

$$\left|\partial_s \bar{H}^R_s(y)\right| = \left|h'(r)\partial_s \zeta_R(s)\omega(X_{\psi_{\zeta_R(s)}}, R_{\lambda_{\zeta_R(s)}})\right| \leq (1+\epsilon_0)\partial_s \zeta_R(s)\mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta_R(s))$$

which implies (16) since  $\epsilon_0$  is already chosen to be less than or equal  $\frac{2}{5}$ . We

estimate using (16)

$$\mathcal{A}^{H_{\sigma}^{R}}(w(\sigma)) - \mathcal{A}^{\alpha^{-}}(w^{-}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \frac{d}{ds} \left( \mathcal{A}^{H_{s}^{R}}(w(s)) \right) ds$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \left( \partial_{s} \mathcal{A}^{H_{s}^{R}} \right) (w(s)) ds$$

$$+ \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} d\mathcal{A}^{H_{s}^{R}}(w(s)) \partial_{s} w(s) ds$$

$$= -\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \int_{0}^{1} \eta(s) \left( \partial_{s} H_{s}^{R} \right) (v(s,t)) dt ds$$

$$+ \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} m_{s}^{R} \left( \nabla_{m_{s}^{R}} \mathcal{A}^{H_{s}^{R}}(w(s), \partial_{s} w(s)) ds \right)$$

$$\geq -2 ||\eta||_{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \partial_{s} \zeta_{R}(s) \mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta_{R}(s)) ds$$

$$+ \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} m_{s}^{R} \left( \partial_{s} w(s), \partial_{s} w(s) \right) ds$$

$$\geq -2 ||\eta||_{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \partial_{s} \zeta_{R}(s) \mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta_{R}(s)) ds$$

$$= -2 ||\eta||_{\infty} \int_{0}^{1} \mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta) d\zeta$$

$$= -2 ||\eta||_{\infty} \Delta(\mathfrak{P})$$

$$= -2 ||\eta||_{\infty} (\Delta + \epsilon_{0})$$

Now using the fact that  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha^-}(w^-) \geq a$  shows the estimate from below in (15). The estimate from above is derived in a similar manner. This finishes the proof of Step 1.

To formulate Step 2 we recall that the energy of w with respect to the metric  $m_s^R$  is defined as

$$E(w) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m_s^R (\partial_s w(s), \partial_s w(s)) ds.$$

**Step 2:** There exists a constant  $c_{\mathfrak{P}}$  such that for every  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  the following inequalities

$$|a-4(\Delta+\epsilon_0)||\eta||_{\infty} - \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}(E(w)+1)}{\sqrt{R}} \leq \mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_R(\sigma)}}(w(\sigma))$$

and

$$\mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_R(\sigma)}}(w(\sigma)) \le b + 4(\Delta + \epsilon_0)||\eta||_{\infty} + \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}(E(w) + 1)}{\sqrt{R}}$$

are satisfied.

For the extension of the stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda_{\zeta^R(s)}$  we use the abbreviation

$$\beta_s^R = \beta_{\lambda_{\zeta^R(s)}}.$$

We claim that for any  $y \in V$  the following estimate holds

$$\left|\partial_s \beta_s^R \left( X_{\bar{H}_s^R}(y) \right) \right| \le 4 \partial_s \zeta^R(s) \mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta^R(s)). \tag{18}$$

If  $y \notin U_{\tau_{\zeta^R(s)}}$ , then  $\beta^R_s$  vanishes and the estimate obviously holds. We abbreviate

$$\dot{\beta}_{s}^{R} = \partial_{\zeta^{R}} \beta_{s}^{R}.$$

Denoting by L the Lie derivative we compute for  $y = \psi_{\zeta_R(s)}(x,r) \in U_{\tau_{\zeta_R(s)}}$ 

$$\begin{split} \dot{\beta}_{s}^{R}\big(X_{\bar{H}_{s}^{R}}(y)\big) &= h'(r)\dot{\beta}_{s}^{R}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &= h'(r)L_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\beta_{s}^{R}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) + h'(r)\phi(r)\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &= h'(r)d\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\beta_{s}^{R}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) + h'(r)\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}d\beta_{s}^{R}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\phi(r)\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &= h'(r)d\big[\phi(r)\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big]\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\big[\phi'(r)dr \wedge \lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)} + \phi(r)d\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big]\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\phi(r)\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &= h'(r)\phi(r)d\big[\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}dr\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\big[\omega_{\Sigma} + \phi'(r)dr \wedge \lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)} + \phi(r)d\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big]\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\phi(r)\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &= h'(r)\phi(r)d\big[\iota_{X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}}\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big]\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\omega\big(X_{\psi_{\zeta^{R}(s)}},R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\phi(r)\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big) \\ &+ h'(r)\phi(r)\dot{\lambda}_{\zeta^{R}(s)}\big(R_{\lambda_{\zeta^{R}(s)}}\big). \end{split}$$

In the fifth equality we have used that the Reeb vector field lies in the kernel of  $\omega_{\Sigma}$ . Using

$$\max \phi \le \rho + 1 \le 2\rho$$
,  $\max h' \le 1 + \epsilon_0 \le 2$ 

we obtain from that the estimate

$$\left|\dot{\beta}_s^R\left(X_{\bar{H}_s^R}(y)\right)\right| \le 4\mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta_R(s))$$

implying (18).

As in the time-independent case we consider the following time-dependent bilinear form on  $T(\mathcal{L}\times\mathbb{R})$ 

$$\widehat{m}_s^R\Big((\hat{v}_1, \hat{\eta}_1), (\hat{v}_2, \hat{\eta}_2)\Big) := \int_0^1 d\beta_s^R(\hat{v}_1, J_{\zeta_R(s)}\hat{v}_2) dt + \hat{\eta}_1 \hat{\eta}_2.$$

By Proposition 4.1 we have for any  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ 

$$abla_{m_s^R} \mathcal{A}^{H_s^R} = 
abla_{\widehat{m}_s^R} \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{H_s^R}$$

Hence the computation in Corollary 4.2 shows that

$$\frac{d}{ds} \left( \mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_R(s)}}(w(s)) \right) = \left( \partial_s \mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_R(s)}} \right) (w(s)) 
+ \left( m_s^R - \widehat{m}_s^R \right) \left( \nabla_{m_s^R} \mathcal{A}^{H_s^R}(w(s)), \nabla_{m_s^R} \mathcal{A}^{H_s^R}(w(s)) \right) 
\geq \left( \partial_s \mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_R(s)}} \right) (w(s)).$$
(19)

For  $\zeta \in [0,1]$  let  $\gamma_{\zeta}$  be the compactly supported 1-form

$$\gamma_{\zeta} = \dot{\beta}_{\lambda_{\zeta}} \circ J_{\zeta}$$

and define the constant  $c_{\mathfrak{P}}$  as

$$c_{\mathfrak{P}} = \max_{\substack{\zeta \in [0,1] \\ y \in V}} ||\gamma_{\zeta}(y)||$$

where the norm is taken with respect to the metric  $\omega(\cdot, J_{\zeta}\cdot)$ . Again we only show the estimate from below. This is derived similarly as the estimate (17) in

Step 1. Using (18) and (19) we obtain

$$\begin{array}{lll} \mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_{R}(\sigma)}}(w(\sigma)) - \mathcal{A}_{\alpha^{-}}(w^{-}) & \geq & -\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \left(\partial_{s}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_{R}(s)}}\right)(w(s))ds \\ \\ & = & -\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s) \left(\int_{0}^{1} v^{*}\dot{\beta}_{s}^{R}dt\right)ds \\ \\ & = & -\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s)\eta(s) \left(\int_{0}^{1} \dot{\beta}_{s}^{R}\left(\eta X_{H_{s}^{R}}(v(s,t))\right)dt\right)ds \\ \\ & -\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s) \left(\int_{0}^{1} \dot{\beta}_{s}^{R}\left(J_{\zeta_{R}(s)}\partial_{s}v(s,t)\right)dt\right)ds \\ \\ & \geq & -4||\eta||_{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s)\mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta_{R}(s))ds \\ \\ & -c_{\mathfrak{P}}\int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \int_{0}^{1} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s)||\partial_{s}v(s,t)||dtds \\ \\ & \geq & -4||\eta||_{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s)\int_{0}^{1} \left(\sqrt{R}||\partial_{s}v(s,t)||^{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{R}}\right)dtds \\ \\ & \geq & -4||\eta||_{\infty}\int_{0}^{\infty} |\mathfrak{V}_{\mathfrak{P}}(\zeta)d\zeta - \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{\sqrt{R}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \partial_{s}\zeta_{R}(s)ds \\ \\ & -\frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{\sqrt{R}}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} ||\partial_{s}w(s)||^{2}ds \\ \\ & \geq & -4||\eta||_{\infty}(\Delta+\epsilon_{0}) - \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}(E(w)+1)}{\sqrt{R}} \end{array}$$

This finishes the proof of Step 2.

**Step 3:** The energy can be estimated by

$$E(w) \le \mathcal{A}^{\alpha^+}(w^+) - \mathcal{A}^{\alpha^-}(w^-) + 2||\eta||_{\infty}(\Delta + \epsilon_0) \le b - a + 2||\eta||_{\infty}(\Delta + \epsilon_0).$$

A careful look at (17) reveals Step 3.

**Step 4:** We prove the theorem.

As in the proof of Proposition 4.4, we set for  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ 

$$\tau(\sigma) = \inf \Big\{ \tau \ge 0 : \Big| \Big| \nabla \mathcal{A}^{H_{\sigma}^{R}} \big( w(\sigma + \tau) \big) \Big| \Big| \le \frac{2}{5} \Big\}.$$

In the time dependent case we still can estimate

$$\tau(\sigma) \le \frac{25E(w)}{4}.\tag{20}$$

Since  $\alpha_{\zeta}$  is  $\left(\frac{3}{5}, \epsilon_{0}\right)$ -admissible for every  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  we conclude from Lemma 4.7 applied to  $\gamma = \frac{3}{5}$  together with the fact that  $||H_{s}^{R}||_{\infty} \leq \frac{3}{5} + \epsilon_{0}$  for every  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  and (20) the following estimate

$$|\eta(\sigma)| \leq |\eta(\sigma + \tau(\sigma))| + \int_{\sigma}^{\sigma + \tau(\sigma)} |\partial_{s}\eta(s)| ds$$

$$\leq \frac{5}{2} \sup |\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{H^{R}} \circ w| + 1 + \tau(\sigma)||H^{R}||_{\infty}$$

$$\leq \frac{5}{2} \sup |\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{H^{R}} \circ w| + 1 + \frac{25E(w)}{4} \left(\frac{3}{5} + \epsilon_{0}\right).$$

$$(21)$$

From Step 1 and Step 2 we obtain the estimate

$$\sup |\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{H^R} \circ w| = \sup |\mathcal{A}^{H^R} \circ w - \mathcal{A}_{\alpha_{\zeta_R}} \circ w|$$

$$\leq b - a + 6(\Delta + \epsilon_0) ||\eta||_{\infty} + \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}(E(w) + 1)}{\sqrt{R}}.$$
(22)

Combining (21) and (22) with Step 3 we obtain

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \leq \frac{5}{2}(b-a) + 1 + \frac{5c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{2\sqrt{R}} + \left(\frac{15}{4} + \frac{25\epsilon_{0}}{4} + \frac{5c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{2\sqrt{R}}\right)E(w)$$

$$+15(\Delta + \epsilon_{0})||\eta||_{\infty}$$

$$\leq \left(\frac{25(1+\epsilon_{0})}{4} + \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{\sqrt{R}}\right)(b-a) + 1 + \frac{5c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{2\sqrt{R}}$$

$$+ \left(\frac{45}{2} + \frac{25\epsilon_{0}}{2} + \frac{5c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{\sqrt{R}}\right)(\Delta + \epsilon_{0})||\eta||_{\infty}.$$
(23)

We now choose  $\Delta = \Delta(\epsilon)$  in such a way that

$$0 < \Delta < \min \left\{ \frac{2\epsilon}{125 + 100\epsilon}, \frac{1}{60} \right\}.$$

The positive number  $\epsilon_0$  which already had to be chosen in such a way that  $\epsilon_0 \leq \frac{2}{5}$  is now supposed to satisfy

$$0 < \epsilon_0 \le \min \left\{ \frac{1}{60} - \Delta, \frac{2\epsilon}{125 + 100\epsilon} - \Delta \right\}.$$

Moreover, we choose R such that

$$R \ge \max \left\{ \left( \frac{5c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{2(1 - 60(\Delta + \epsilon_0))} \right)^2, \left( \frac{c_{\mathfrak{P}}}{\epsilon} \right)^2 \right\}.$$

With these choices we get from (23)

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \le \left(\frac{25}{4} + 2\epsilon\right)(b-a) + 2(1 - 30(\Delta + \epsilon_0)) + 30(\Delta + \epsilon_0)||\eta||_{\infty}.$$

Using  $\Delta + \epsilon_0 \leq \frac{2\epsilon}{125 + 100\epsilon}$  we obtain

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \leq \frac{1}{1 - 30(\Delta + \epsilon_0)} \left(\frac{25}{4} + 2\epsilon\right) (b - a) + 2$$

$$\leq \left(\frac{25}{4} + 5\epsilon\right) (b - a) + 2$$

$$\leq \left(\frac{5}{2} + \epsilon\right)^2 (b - a) + 2.$$

This finishes the proof of the theorem.

### 4.3 An existence result for a periodic Reeb orbit

In this subsection we show how compactness for gradient flow lines of Rabinowitz action functional leads to existence of a periodic Reeb orbit on stable displaceable hypersurfaces. This result is not new. Indeed, F. Schlenk proved it before in [65] using quite different methods. Before stating the theorem we recall some well-known notions.

A hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectic manifold  $(V,\omega)$  is called *displaceable*, if there exists a compactly supported Hamiltonian  $F \in C^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$  such that the time-one flow  $\phi_F$  of the time dependent Hamiltonian vector field  $X_{F_t}$  with  $F_t = F(\cdot,t) \in C^{\infty}(V)$  satisfies

$$\phi_F(\Sigma) \cap \Sigma = \emptyset.$$

The positive and the negative part of the Hofer norm for the compactly supported Hamiltonian F are given by

$$||F||_{+} = \int_{0}^{1} \max_{V} F_{t} dt, \quad ||F||_{-} = -\int_{0}^{1} \min_{V} F_{t} dt$$

and the Hofer norm itself by

$$||F|| = ||F||_+ + ||F||_-.$$

If  $\Sigma \subset V$  is a displaceable hypersurface its displacement energy is given by

$$e(\Sigma) = \inf\{||F|| : \phi_F(\Sigma) \cap \Sigma = \emptyset\}.$$

Recall from (2) the  $\omega$ -energy for closed characteristics.

**Theorem 4.9** (Schlenk). Assume that  $\Sigma$  is a stable, displaceable hypersurface in a symplectically aspherical, geometrically bounded, symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$ . Then  $\Sigma$  has a closed characteristic v which is contractible in V and satisfies

$$\Omega(v) \leq e(\Sigma)$$
.

Our proof of Theorem 4.9 is based on a homotopy stretching argument for a time dependent perturbation of Rabinowitz action functional where the perturbation is given by the displacing Hamiltonian.

The crucial point is that the perturbed Rabinowitz action functional has no critical points anymore. This is actually true for any separating closed hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectically aspherical, symplectic manifold  $(V,\omega)$ . If  $\Sigma = \bar{H}^{-1}(0)$  for a Hamiltonian  $\bar{H} \in C^{\infty}(V)$  we choose  $\chi \in C^{\infty}(S^1,\mathbb{R})$  of integral one which in addition meets the condition

$$\operatorname{supp}\chi\subset(0,1/2)$$

and set as usual

$$H(t,y)=\chi(t)\bar{H}(y),\quad y\in V,\ t\in S^1.$$

Without changing the Hofer norm we furthermore can reparametrize the flow of the displacing Hamiltonian  $F_t$  such that we can assume that

$$F_t = 0, \quad t \in [0, 1/2].$$

The perturbation of Rabinowitz action functional we consider is the functional  $\mathcal{A}_F^H \colon \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$\mathcal{A}_F^H(v,\eta) = \mathcal{A}^H(v,\eta) - \int_0^1 F_t(v(t))dt, \quad (v,\eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}.$$

We further denote by

$$\mathfrak{S}(X_{\bar{H}}) = \operatorname{cl}\{y \in V : X_{\bar{H}}(y) \neq 0\}$$

the support of the Hamiltonian vector field of  $\bar{H}$ . The following Lemma is proved in [12] where it appears as Lemma 3.10. It immediately implies that a suitable perturbed Rabinowitz action functional has no critical points anymore.

**Lemma 4.10.** Assume that  $\mathfrak{S}(X_{\bar{H}})$  is compact and  $\phi_F(\mathfrak{S}(X_{\bar{H}})) \cap \mathfrak{S}(X_{\bar{H}}) = \emptyset$ . Then for every  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure J on V there exists a constant  $\mu = \mu(J) > 0$  such that if  $\nabla$  is the gradient and  $||\cdot||$  is the norm of the metric on  $\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  induced from J, then for every  $(v, \eta) \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  it holds that

$$||\nabla \mathcal{A}_F^H(v,\eta)|| \ge \mu.$$

With the help of this Lemma we are now armed for the proof of Schlenk's Theorem.

**Proof of Theorem 4.9:** Given  $\epsilon_0 > 0$  we choose a time dependent Hamiltonian  $F_t$  satisfying the following conditions

$$F_t = 0, \ t \in [0, 1/2], \quad \phi_F(\Sigma) \cap \Sigma = \emptyset, \quad ||F|| < e(\Sigma) + \epsilon_0.$$

We further choose a  $(\gamma, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple  $\alpha = (\lambda, \tau, \phi, h, \chi)$  which satisfies

$$\operatorname{supp}\chi \subset (0, 1/2), \quad \phi_F(U_\tau) \cap U_\tau = \emptyset.$$

The first condition can obviously be achieved. To see that one can also assume without loss of generality the second condition we note that since  $\Sigma$  is compact there exists an open neighbourhood  $U_{\Sigma}$  of  $\Sigma$  in V which is also displaced by  $\phi_F$ . Now by choosing  $\lambda$  arbitrarily small we can arrange that even a large tubular neighbourhood  $U_{\tau}$  is contained in  $U_{\Sigma}$ .

We further choose a smooth family of cutoff functions  $\beta_r \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, [0, 1])$  for  $r \in [0, \infty)$  with the following properties

$$\beta_r(s) = 0 |s| \ge r 
\beta_r(s) = 1 |s| \le r - 1 
s \beta'_r(s) \le 0 \forall r, \forall s.$$
(24)

We now consider the r-parametrised family of time dependent perturbed Rabinowitz action functionals defined by

$$\mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha}(v,\eta,s) = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta) - \beta_r(s) \int_0^1 F_t(v(t)) dt, \quad v \in \mathcal{L}, \ \eta \in \mathbb{R}, \ s \in \mathbb{R}, \ r \in [0,\infty).$$

We note that

$$\mathcal{A}_0^{\alpha} = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}$$

is independent of the s-variable. We further choose an  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$  and denote by  $\nabla$  the gradient with respect to the metric m on  $\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  induced from J. We fix a point  $x \in \Sigma$  and think of it as a loop in  $\mathcal{L}$ . We are studying solutions  $(w,r) = (v,\eta,r) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R},\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}) \times [0,\infty)$  of the following problem

$$\partial_s w(s) = \nabla \mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha}(s, w(s)), \ s \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \lim_{s \to -\infty} w(s) = (x, 0), \quad \lim_{s \to \infty} w(s) \in \Sigma \times \{0\}.$$
(25)

We use the following abbreviation for its moduli space

$$\mathcal{M} = \{(w, r) : (w, r) \text{ solution of } (25)\}.$$

To prove the Theorem we argue by contradiction and assume

$$\Omega(v) > ||F||, \quad \forall \ v \in X(\Sigma).$$
 (26)

To see how this leads to a contradiction, we first show the following claim.

Claim: If (26) holds, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is compact.

We prove the Claim in four steps. For the first step recall that the energy of w is defined by

$$E(w) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} ||\partial_s w||^2 ds$$

where the norm is taken with respect to the metric m induced from the  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure J.

Step 1: If  $(w,r) \in \mathcal{M}$  then  $E(w) \leq ||F||$ .

We estimate using (25)

$$E(w) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha}(w)(\partial_s w) ds$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{d}{ds} \mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha}(w) ds - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (\partial_s \mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha})(w) ds$$

$$= 0 + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \beta_r'(s) \left( \int_0^1 F_t(v) dt \right) ds$$

$$\leq ||F||_+ \int_{-\infty}^0 \beta_r'(s) ds - ||F||_- \int_0^{\infty} \beta_r'(s) ds$$

$$\leq ||F||_+ + ||F||_-$$

$$= ||F||.$$

This finishes the proof of Step 1.

**Step 2:** There exists  $r_0 \in \mathbb{R}$  such that if  $(w, r) \in \mathcal{M}$  then  $r \leq r_0$ .

Combining Lemma 4.10 with Step 1 we obtain the estimate

$$\begin{split} ||F|| & \geq & \int_{-r}^{r} ||\nabla \mathcal{A}_{F}^{\alpha}(w)||^{2} ds \\ & \geq & 2\mu^{2} r \end{split}$$

implying that

$$r \leq \frac{||F||}{2\mu^2} =: r_0$$

This finishes the proof of Step 2.

**Step 3:** There exists a constant c > 0 such that for all  $(w, r) = (v, \eta, r) \in \mathcal{M}$  the Lagrange multiplier  $\eta$  is uniformly bounded by  $||\eta|| \le c$ .

To prove Step 3 we estimate the functional  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha} - \widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha}$  along w. Note that we do not perturb  $\mathcal{A}$  with the displacing Hamiltonian F. It is useful to introduce further the functional

$$\mathcal{F} \colon \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}, \quad (v, \eta) \mapsto \int_0^1 F_t(v(t)) dt$$

which actually only depends on the first variable. By Proposition 4.1 we have

$$\nabla_{\widehat{m}}\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha} = \nabla_m \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}.$$

Hence using (25) we estimate similarly as in Corollary 4.2

$$\frac{d}{ds}\mathcal{A}(w) = d\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(w)\partial_{s}w - d\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha}(w)\partial_{s}w 
= m(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(w), \partial_{s}w) - \widehat{m}(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(w), \partial_{s}w) 
= (m - \widehat{m})(\partial_{s}w, \partial_{s}w) + \beta_{r}(m - \widehat{m})(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{F}(w), \partial_{s}w) 
\geq \beta_{r}(m - \widehat{m})(\nabla_{m}\mathcal{F}(w), \partial_{s}w).$$

Since F has compact support there exists a constant  $c_0$  such that for all  $w \in \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$ 

$$\left|\left|(m-\widehat{m})(\nabla_m \mathcal{F}(w),\cdot)\right|\right|_m \le c_0.$$

Hence we obtain for  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  using Step 1 and Step 2

$$\mathcal{A}(w(\sigma)) = \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \frac{d}{ds} \mathcal{A}(w) ds$$

$$\geq \int_{-\infty}^{\sigma} \beta_r(m - \widehat{m}) (\nabla_m \mathcal{F}(w), \partial_s w) ds$$

$$\geq -c_0 \int_{-r}^{r} ||\partial_s w||_m ds$$

$$\geq -c_0 \int_{-r}^{r} (||\partial_s w||_m^2 + 1) ds$$

$$\geq -c_0 (2r + E(w))$$

$$\geq -c_0 (2r_0 + ||F||).$$

Similarly, one gets

$$-\mathcal{A}(w(\sigma)) = \int_{\sigma}^{\infty} \frac{d}{ds} \mathcal{A}(w) ds \le c_0 (2r_0 + ||F||).$$

Defining the constant

$$c_1 = c_0(2r_0 + ||F||)$$

we obtain from the previous two estimates the uniform  $L^{\infty}$ -bound

$$||\mathcal{A} \circ w|| \leq c_1.$$

Moreover, a closer look at the estimate in Step 1 reveals that

$$||\mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha} \circ w|| < ||F||.$$

Noting that for  $s \notin (-r, r)$  we have  $\mathcal{A}_r^{\alpha}(\cdot, s) = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}$  we obtain from the previous two inequalities

$$|\widehat{\mathcal{A}}^{\alpha}(w(s))| \le c_1 + ||F||, \quad s \in \mathbb{R} \setminus (-r, r). \tag{27}$$

The proof for the bound of the Lagrange multiplier now proceeds similarly as in Proposition 4.4. For  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  we set

$$\tau(\sigma) = \inf \left\{ \tau : \sigma + \tau \notin (-r, r), \ ||\nabla \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(w(\sigma + \tau))|| \le \frac{2\gamma}{3} \right\}.$$

Again  $\tau(\sigma)$  can be estimated in terms of the energy by

$$\tau(\sigma) \le \frac{9E(w)}{4\gamma^2} + 2r \le \frac{9||F||}{4\gamma^2} + 2r_0. \tag{28}$$

Combining Lemma 4.3 with (27) and (28) and using  $\partial_s \eta = -\int_0^1 H(v)dt$  we estimate

$$|\eta(\sigma)| \leq |\eta(\sigma + \tau(\sigma))| + \int_{\sigma}^{\sigma + \tau(\sigma)} |\partial_{s}\eta| ds$$

$$\leq \frac{3c_{1} + 3||F|| + 2\gamma}{3(1 - \gamma)} + (\gamma + \epsilon)\tau(\sigma)$$

$$\leq \frac{3c_{1} + 3||F|| + 2\gamma}{3(1 - \gamma)} + \frac{9||F||(\gamma + \epsilon)}{4\gamma^{2}} + 2r_{0}(\gamma + \epsilon).$$

Since  $\sigma$  was arbitrary we are done with Step 3.

#### **Step 4:** We prove the claim.

For  $\nu \in \mathbb{N}$  let  $(w_{\nu}, r_{\nu}) = (v_{\nu}, \eta_{\nu}, r_{\nu})$  be a sequence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since the homotopy parameter  $r_{\nu}$  is uniformly bounded by Step 2 and the Lagrange multiplier  $\eta_{\nu}$  is uniformly bounded by Step 3 standard arguments in Floer theory imply that  $(w_{\nu}, r_{\nu})$  has a  $C_{\text{loc}}^{\infty}$ -convergent subsequence. Indeed,  $v_{\nu}$  satisfies a uniform  $C^{0}$ -bound by the assumption that  $(V, \omega)$  is geometrically bounded and the derivatives of  $v_{\nu}$  can be controlled because there is no bubbling since  $(V, \omega)$  is symplectically aspherical. Let (w, r) be the limit of the subsequence. (w, r) obviously satisfies the first equation in (25). It remains to check that w satisfies the asymptotic conditions. Again by compactness it follows that w(s) converges to critical points  $w^{\pm} = (v^{\pm}, \eta^{\pm})$  of  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}$  as s goes to  $\pm \infty$ . On the other hand it follows from Step 1 that

$$\mathcal{A}_{r}^{\alpha}(w(s)) \in [-||F||, ||F||], \quad \forall \ s \in \mathbb{R}$$

and hence

$$\Omega(v^{\pm}) = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(w^{\pm}) \in [-||F||, ||F||].$$

Therefore (26) implies that  $v^{\pm}$  has to be constant and hence

$$w^- = (x, 0), \quad w^+ \in \Sigma \times \{0\}.$$

This finishes the prove of the claim.

Given the claim we are now in position to prove the theorem in a last step.

#### Step 5: We prove the theorem.

Given the claim it remains to argue that the compactness of the moduli space  $\mathcal{M}$  is absurd in order to show that (26) cannot be true. For r=0 there is precisely one point  $(w,0) \in \mathcal{M}$  namely the constant gradient flow line w=(x,0). The constant gradient flow line is regular in the sense that the linearization of the gradient flow equation at it is surjective. Thinking of the moduli space  $\mathcal{M}$  as the zero set of a Fredholm section from a Banach space into a Banach bundle and using that it is compact we can perturb this section slightly to make it transverse. The zero set of the perturbed section is now a compact manifold with one single boundary point (x,0,0). However, such manifolds do not exist. Therefore (26) had to be wrong and we conclude that there exists  $v \in X(\Sigma)$  such that

$$\Omega(v) \le ||F|| < e(\Sigma) + \epsilon_0.$$

Since  $\epsilon_0 > 0$  was arbitrary the theorem follows.

### 4.4 Approvable perturbations

Except in the case where V is zero dimensional, the Rabinowitz action functional is never Morse, since its critical set contains the constant solutions and each nontrivial Reeb orbit comes in an  $S^1$ -family coming from time-shift. The best situation we can hope for, is that Rabinowitz action functional is Morse-Bott. However, since the stability condition is not an open condition [15], a slight perturbation of a stable hypersurface might not be stable anymore.

In this subsection we study a class of perturbations of Rabinowitz action functional. We first show that for a generic perturbation the perturbed Rabinowitz action functional is Morse. We then explain how in the weakly tame case for small perturbations the moduli space of gradient flow lines in a fixed action interval can be written as the disjoint union of two closed subspaces where one of them is compact. We refer to the compact part as the essential part of the moduli space of gradient flow lines. We finally explain how the essential part of the moduli space of gradient flow lines can be used to define a boundary operator for a fixed action interval.

The perturbations of Rabinowitz action functional we consider are reminiscent of the ones we considered in the previous subsection, however they are more general, since we do not require that the time support of the additional perturbation Hamiltonian is disjoint from the time support of the Hamiltonian  $H_{\alpha}$ . Namely we choose a compactly supported time-dependent Hamiltonian  $F \in C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$  and define  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha} \colon \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  as in the previous subsection by

$$\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}(v,\eta) = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(v,\eta) - \int_0^1 F_t(v(t))dt.$$

Critical points of the action functional  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  are solutions of the problem

$$\partial_t v = \eta X_H(v) + X_{F_t}(v)$$

$$\int_0^1 H(v(t))dt = 0.$$
(29)

We first show that for generic perturbations the perturbed action functional is Morse.

**Proposition 4.11.** Given an admissible quadruple  $\alpha$ , there exists a subset  $\mathcal{U}(\alpha) \in C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$  of the second category such that  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  is Morse for every  $F \in \mathcal{U}(\alpha)$ .

Proof. Consider the Hilbert manifold

$$\mathcal{H} = W^{1,2}(S^1, V) \times \mathbb{R}$$

where we define  $W^{1,2}(S^1, V)$  by embedding V into  $\mathbb{R}^N$  for N large enough. Over the Hilbert manifold  $\mathcal{H}$  we introduce the Hilbert bundle

$$\pi \colon \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{H}$$

whose fibre over  $(v, \eta) \in \mathcal{H}$  is given by

$$\mathcal{E}_{(v,\eta)} = L^2(S^1, v^*TV) \times \mathbb{R}.$$

Choose an  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure J and denote by  $\nabla$  the gradient with respect to the metric  $\omega(\cdot, J\cdot)$ . For  $F \in C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$  we define a section

$$s_F \colon \mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{E}$$

by

$$s_F(v,\eta) = \begin{pmatrix} J\partial_t v - \eta \nabla H(v) - \nabla F_t(v) \\ \int_0^1 H(v(t)) dt \end{pmatrix}.$$

Note that the zero set  $s_F^{-1}(0)$  coincides with the solutions of (29). If  $w \in \mathcal{H} \subset \mathcal{E}$  then there is a canonical splitting

$$T_w \mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_w \times T_w \mathcal{H}.$$

We denote by

$$\Pi_w: T_w\mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{E}_w$$

the projection along  $T_w \mathcal{H}$ . If  $(v, \eta) \in s_F^{-1}(0)$  we introduce the vertical differential

$$Ds_F(v,\eta) \colon T_{(v,\eta)} \mathcal{H} = W^{1,2}(S^1, v^*TV) \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{E}_{(v,\eta)}$$

by

$$Ds_F(v,\eta) = \Pi_{(v,\eta)} \circ ds_F(v,\eta).$$

The action functional  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  is Morse iff the vertical differential  $Ds_F(w)$  is surjective for every  $w \in s_F^{-1}(0)$  meaning that  $s_F$  is transverse to the zero section

$$s_F \pitchfork 0.$$
 (30)

We prove in two steps that (30) holds for generic  $F \in C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$ . In the first step we prove transversality for weaker differentiability assumptions. The smooth case follows then by an argument due to Taubes.

**Step 1:** Assume that  $2 \leq k < \infty$ . Then there exists  $\mathcal{U}^k(\alpha) \subset C_c^k(V \times S^1)$  of the second category, such that (30) holds for any  $F \in \mathcal{U}^k(\alpha)$ .

Consider the section

$$S \colon C_c^k(V \times S^1) \times \mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{E}$$

which is defined by

$$S(F, w) = s_F(w), \quad F \in C_c^k(V \times S^1), \ w \in \mathcal{H}.$$

If  $(F, w) \in S^{-1}(0)$  with  $w = (v, \eta)$ , then the vertical differential

$$DS(F, w): T_{(F,w)}(C_c^k(V \times S^1) \times \mathcal{H}) = C_c^k(V \times S^1) \times T_w \mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{E}_w$$

is given for  $\hat{F} \in C_c^k(V \times S^1)$  and  $\hat{w} \in T_w \mathcal{H}$  by

$$DS(F, w)(\hat{F}, \hat{w}) = Ds_F(w)\hat{w} + \begin{pmatrix} -\nabla \hat{F}_t(v) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$
(31)

We first show the following claim.

Claim: For every  $(F, w) \in S^{-1}(0)$  the operator DS(F, w) is surjective.

Pick  $(F, w) \in S^{-1}(0)$ . Since  $Ds_F(w)$  is Fredholm, the image of DS(F, w) is closed. Hence to show surjectivity, it suffices to prove that the orthogonal complement of the image of DS(F, w) vanishes. To see that pick

$$x = (y, \zeta) \in \mathrm{im} DS(F, w)^{\perp}.$$

It follows from (31) that

$$\langle Ds_F(w)\hat{w}, x \rangle = 0, \quad \forall \ \hat{w} \in T_w \mathcal{H} 
\langle \nabla \hat{F}(v), y \rangle = 0, \quad \forall \ \hat{F} \in C_c^k(V \times S^1).$$
(32)

The first equation in (32) implies that

$$x \in \ker(Ds_F(w))^*$$

which forces y to be of class  $C^{k-1}$ . Now we assume by contradiction that there exists  $t_0 \in S^1$  such that

$$y(t_0) \neq 0$$
.

Choose  $\hat{F}_{t_0} \in C_c^k(V)$  such that

$$\langle \nabla \hat{F}_{t_0}(v(t_0)), y(t_0) \rangle > 0.$$

Since we have seen that y is continuous, there exists  $\epsilon > 0$  such that

$$\langle \nabla \hat{F}_{t_0}(v(t)), y(t) \rangle \ge 0, \quad t \in (t_0 - \epsilon, t_0 + \epsilon).$$

Now choose a smooth cutoff function  $\beta \in C^{\infty}(S^1, [0, 1])$  such that  $\beta(t_0) = 1$  and  $\beta(t) = 0$  for  $t \notin (t_0 - \epsilon, t_0 + \epsilon)$  and set  $\hat{F}_t = \beta(t)\hat{F}_{t_0}$ . It follows that

$$\langle \nabla \hat{F}, y \rangle = \int_0^1 \beta(t) \langle \nabla \hat{F}_{t_0}(v(t)), y(t) \rangle dt > 0$$

contradicting the second equation in (32). This proves that y has to vanish identically.

It remains to show that  $\zeta$  vanishes. To see this we write

$$\hat{w} = (\hat{v}, \hat{\eta}) \in T_w \mathcal{H} = W^{1,2}(S^1, v^*TV) \times \mathbb{R}.$$

Since y vanishes identically the first equation in (32) becomes

$$\zeta \int_0^1 dH(v(t))\hat{v}(t)dt = 0, \quad \forall \ \hat{v} \in W^{1,2}(S^1, v^*TV).$$

Note that  $(v, \eta)$  is a solution of (29). Hence, since 0 is a regular value of H, it follows from the second equation in (29) that dH(v) does not vanish identically along v. Therefore, there exists  $\hat{v} \in W^{1,2}(S^1, v^*TV)$  such that

$$\int_0^1 dH(v(t))\hat{v}(t)dt \neq 0.$$

Consequently,

$$\zeta = 0.$$

This finishes the proof of the claim.

Since  $F \in C_c^k(V \times S^1)$  it follows that the section S is  $C^{k-1}$ . Hence by the claim the implicit function theorem shows that  $S^{-1}(0)$  is a  $C^{k-1}$ -manifold. Consider the  $C^{k-1}$ -map

$$p: S^{-1}(0) \to C_c^k(V \times S^1), \quad (F, w) \mapsto F.$$

It follows from the Sard-Smale theorem that the set of regular values of the map p is of the second category in  $C_c^k(V \times S^1)$ . But F is a regular value of p, precisely if  $s_F \pitchfork 0$ . This finishes the proof of Step 1.

**Step 2:** We prove the proposition.

We explain the argument by Taubes in our set-up (cf. [52, p.52]).

Since  $X_H$  and  $X_{F_t}$  have compact support and 0 is a regular value of H it follows that there exists a compact subset  $V_0 \subset V$  such that for every  $(v, \eta) \in \operatorname{crit}(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha})$ 

$$v(t) \in V_0, \quad t \in S^1. \tag{33}$$

Choose T > 0 and abbreviate

$$\operatorname{crit}_T(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}) = \{(v, \eta) \in \operatorname{crit}(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}) : |\eta| \le T\}.$$

It follows from (33), the first equation in (29) and the Theorem of Arzela-Ascoli that  $\operatorname{crit}_T(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha})$  is compact. For  $2 \leq k \leq \infty$  we abbreviate

$$\mathcal{U}_T^k(\alpha) = \left\{ F \in C_c^k(V \times S^1) : Ds_F(w) \text{ surjective, } \forall \ w \in \operatorname{crit}_T(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) \right\}.$$

Since  $\operatorname{crit}_T(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha})$  is compact it follows that  $\mathcal{U}_T^k(\alpha)$  is open in  $C_c^k(V\times S^1)$ . Moreover, it follows from Step 1 that if  $k<\infty$  it is also dense in  $C_c^k(V\times S^1)$ . Since  $C^{\infty}$  is dense in  $C^k$  for every k, a diagonal argument shows that  $\mathcal{U}_T^{\infty}(\alpha)$  is also dense in  $C_c^{\infty}(V\times S^1)$ . It follows that

$$\mathcal{U}(\alpha) = \bigcap_{T \in \mathbb{N}} \mathcal{U}_T^{\infty}(\alpha)$$

is of the second category in  $C_c^\infty(V\times S^1)$ . This finishes the proof of the proposition.  $\Box$ 

If  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$  is an  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure and  $m = m_J$  is the metric induced from J we denote by  $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}, J)$  the moduli space of all finite energy gradient flow lines of  $\nabla_m \mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$ . For  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  we abbreviate

$$\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) = \Big\{ w \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) : \mathcal{A}_F^\alpha(w(s)) \in [a,b], \ \forall \ s \in \mathbb{R} \Big\}.$$

We cannot expect that gradient flow lines of the perturbed action functional are still compact up to breaking. However, we show that in the case of weakly tame stable hypersurfaces for small perturbations there is a decomposition of  $\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}, J)$  into a disjoint union of *closed* subsets

$$\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J) = \underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J) \sqcup \overline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$$

where  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$  is compact up to breaking of gradient flow lines. We refer to  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$  as the essential part of the moduli space  $\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$  and to  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J; a, b)$  as the unessential part. The boundary operator then takes only account of the essential part of the moduli space of gradient flow lines.

If  $\Sigma$  is weakly tame then by definition for  $a \leq b$  the set

$$\operatorname{crit}_a^b(\mathcal{A}^\alpha) = \left\{ w \in \operatorname{crit}(\mathcal{A}^\alpha) : a \le \mathcal{A}^\alpha(w) \le b \right\}$$

is compact. Hence we can define

$$\aleph(a, b; \alpha) = \min \left\{ a, \min \left\{ \mathcal{A}(w) : w \in \operatorname{crit}_a^b(\mathcal{A}^\alpha) \right\} \right\}$$

and

$$\beth(a,b;\alpha) = \max \Big\{ b, \max \big\{ \mathcal{A}^{\alpha}(w) : w \in \operatorname{crit}_a^b(\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}) \big\} \Big\}.$$

Note that  $\aleph(a,b)$  and  $\beth(a,b)$  actually only depend on  $\pi(\alpha) = \lambda \in \Lambda_s(\Sigma,\omega)$  so that we can set

$$\aleph(a, b; \lambda) = \aleph(a, b; \alpha), \quad \exists (a, b; \lambda) = \exists (a, b; \alpha).$$

We next introduce a subspace of perturbations F which have the property that the Lagrange multiplier along gradient flow lines either becomes large or remains small. We first introduce the number

and define the interval

$$I(a, b; \lambda) = [\Im(a, b; \lambda) + 3, \Im(a, b; \lambda) + 4].$$

We set

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha,J) = \Big\{ F \in C_c^\infty(V \times S^1) : ||\eta||_\infty \notin I(a,b;\lambda), \ \forall \ w = (v,\eta) \in \mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) \Big\}.$$

**Lemma 4.12.** Assume that  $\Sigma$  is a weakly tame stable hypersurface in a symplectically aspherical, geometrically bounded, symplectic manifold  $(V,\omega)$  and  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}(\Sigma,V)$  is a  $\left(\frac{3}{5},\epsilon\right)$ -admissible quintuple with  $\epsilon \leq \frac{1}{\Im(a,b;\lambda)}$ ,  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$  and  $a \leq b$ . Then  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha,J)$  is open and nonempty.

*Proof.* We first show that  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha,J)$  is open. This is actually true for any admissible quintuple  $\alpha$ . For openness we prove that the complement is closed. Hence let

$$F_{\nu} \in C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1) \setminus \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J), \quad \nu \in \mathbb{N}$$

be a sequence of perturbations in the complement of  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha,J)$  such that

$$\lim_{\nu \to \infty} F_{\nu} = F \in C^{\infty}(V \times S^{1}).$$

It remains to show that  $F \notin \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J)$ . By definition of  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J)$  there exists for each  $\nu \in \mathbb{N}$  a gradient flow line

$$w_{\nu} = (v_{\nu}, \eta_{\nu}) \in \mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_{F_{\nu}}^{\alpha}, J)$$

such that

$$||\eta_{\nu}||_{\infty} \in I(a,b;\lambda). \tag{34}$$

Since the Lagrange multiplier is uniformly bounded the usual compactness arguments in Floer homology (boundedness at infinity and no bubbling because

of symplectic asphericity) imply that  $w_{\nu}$  has a convergent subsequence  $w_{\nu_{j}}$  such that

$$\lim_{j \to \infty} w_{\nu_j} = w = (v, \eta) \in \mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J).$$

Since  $I(a, b; \lambda)$  is closed it follows from (34) that

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \in I(a,b;\lambda).$$

Consequently

$$F \notin \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J).$$

This finishes the proof of openness.

To see finally that  $\mathcal{U}_a^b(\alpha, J)$  is nonempty we observe that by our assumptions on the admissible quintuple  $\alpha$  it follows from Corollary 4.5 that

$$0 \in \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J).$$

Hence we are done with the proof of the Lemma.

**Definition.** For a fixed pair  $(\alpha, J)$  consisting of an admissible quintuple  $\alpha$  and an  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structure  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$  and  $a \leq b$  we say that a perturbation  $F \in C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$  is (a, b)-approvable if  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  is Morse and contained in  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J)$ . We set

$$\mathcal{U}_a^b(\alpha, J) = \{ F \in \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J) : \mathcal{A}_F^\alpha \text{ Morse} \}$$

for the set of (a, b)-approvable perturbations.

Combining Proposition 4.11 with Lemma 4.12 we obtain the following Corollary.

**Corollary 4.13.** Under the assumptions of Lemma 4.12 the set  $\mathcal{U}_a^b(\alpha, J)$  is nonempty.

We finally explain how to associate to an (a, b)-approvable perturbation F a homology group  $HF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$ . We first define the set

$$\mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) = \left\{ w = (v, \eta) \in \operatorname{crit}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) : |\eta| < \Im(a, b; \lambda) + 3 \right\}. \tag{35}$$

Because  $\mathrm{crit}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)\subset\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J)$  and F is (a,b)-approvable we infer

$$\mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) = \big\{ w = (v,\eta) \in \operatorname{crit}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) : |\eta| \leq \gimel(a,b;\lambda) + 3 \big\}.$$

Applying the Theorem of Arzela-Ascoli to the critical point equation (29) of  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  we see that  $\mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha})$  is compact. Since  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  is Morse the set  $\mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha})$  is also discrete and hence finite. Thus

$$CF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) = \mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) \otimes \mathbb{Z}_2$$

is a finite dimensional  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -vector space. We further define the essential part of the moduli space  $\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$  to be

$$\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) = \Big\{ w = (v,\eta) \in \mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) : ||\eta||_\infty < \Im(a,b;\lambda) + 3 \Big\}.$$

Since F is (a,b)-approvable it follows that  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J)$  is a closed subset of  $\mathcal{M}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J)$ . Moreover, since the Lagrange multiplier is by definition uniformly bounded in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J)$  standard arguments in Floer theory using that  $(V,\omega)$  is geometrically bounded and symplectically aspherical imply that  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J)$  is  $C_{\text{loc}}^\infty$ -compact. Hence we can use  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J)$  to define a linear map

$$\partial_a^b \colon CF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) \to CF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)$$

by counting gradient flow lines. Since the metric m induced from J does not necessarily fulfill the Morse-Smale condition one may need to perturb the gradient flow equation to show that  $\partial_a^b \circ \partial_a^b = 0$ . It is quite likely that this can actually be achieved by taking a generic family of  $\omega$ -compatible almost complex structures  $J_t$ . However, we have not checked the details since this is nowadays not needed anymore in view of the progress of abstract perturbation theory. For example, if one compactifies the moduli space of unparametrised trajectories  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)/\mathbb{R}$  by adding broken gradient flow lines, this compactified space can be interpreted as the zero-set of a Fredholm-section

$$\varsigma \colon \mathcal{P} \to \mathcal{E}$$

where  $\mathcal{P}$  is an M-polyfold and  $\mathcal{E}$  is an M-polyfold bundle over  $\mathcal{P}$ , see [38]. If one perturbs this section to make it transverse, see [39], one can define a boundary operator by counting the perturbed broken gradient trajectories between two critical points. Indeed, if  $\wp$  is a generic abstract perturbation and

$$\varsigma_{\omega} \colon \mathcal{P} \to \mathcal{E}$$

is the perturbed section, then its zero-set

$$\mathcal{N}(\wp) = \varsigma_{\wp}^{-1}(0)$$

is a compact manifold with corners. We denote by  $\mathcal{N}_0(\wp)$  its zero-dimensional part. For a generic perturbation the section  $\varsigma_\wp$  is also transverse with respect to the boundary of the polyfold  $\mathcal{P}$  and hence elements in  $\mathcal{N}_0(\wp)$  consist still of unparametrised trajectories  $[w] \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})/\mathbb{R}$  which are unbroken and converge asymptotically to critical points in  $\mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)$ . Hence for  $w^\pm \in \mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)$  we abbreviate

$$\mathcal{N}_0(\wp; w^-, w^+) = \left\{ [w] \in \mathcal{N}_0(\wp) : \lim_{s \to +\infty} w(s) = w^{\pm} \right\}$$

and introduce the  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -number

$$n(w^-, w^+) = \#_2 \mathcal{N}_0(\wp; w^-, w^+)$$

where  $\#_2$  denotes the count in  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ . We define a linear map

$$\partial_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J; \wp) \colon CF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) \to CF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)$$

which is defined on generators by

$$\partial_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J;\wp)[w^+] = \sum_{w^- \in \mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)} n(w^-,w^+)w^-.$$

Standard arguments show that  $\partial_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J; \wp)$  is actually a boundary operator, i.e. its square is zero. The boundary operator might depend indeed on the abstract perturbation but the homology

$$HF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J) = \frac{\ker \partial_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J; \wp)}{\operatorname{im} \partial_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J; \wp)}$$
(36)

is independent of the abstract perturbation by standard homotopy arguments.

### 4.5 Definition of Rabinowitz Floer homology

In this subsection we assume that  $\Sigma$  is a weakly tame stable hypersurface in a symplectically aspherical, geometrically bounded, symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$ . In this situation we define Rabinowitz Floer homology. We further compute it for two relevant cases. One case is when there are no closed orbits in  $\Sigma$  contractible in V, and the other is when  $\Sigma$  is displaceable.

We define the  $\Omega$ -spectrum of  $\Sigma$  to be

$$\mho(\Sigma) = \{ \pm \Omega(v) : v \in X(\Sigma) \} \cup \{0\}$$

where we recall that  $X(\Sigma)$  denotes the set of closed characteristics in  $\Sigma$  which are contractible in V. Since each  $\Omega(v)$  corresponds to a critical value of Rabinowitz action functional  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}$  for an admissible quintuple  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}(\Sigma, V)$  the set  $\mathfrak{G}(\Sigma)$  is a meager subset of  $\mathbb{R}$  by Sard's theorem.

Our first aim is to define Rabinowitz Floer homology groups  $RFH_a^b$  for  $a, b \notin \mathcal{O}(\Sigma)$ . These groups basically depend only on  $\Sigma$  and V. However, there is a little subtlety to note. We do not know if the space of all  $\omega$ -compatible geometrically bounded almost complex structures J on V is connected. Therefore Rabinowitz Floer homology actually could depend on the choice of the geometrically bounded compatible almost complex structure. We therefore fix one such complex structure  $J_0$ . For an admissible quintuple  $\alpha$  we abbreviate by

$$\mathcal{J}(\alpha, J_0) \subset \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$$

the set of all  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha)$  which outside of a compact set coincide with  $J_0$ . We observe that the space  $\mathcal{J}(\alpha, J_0)$  is connected. It is possible that Rabinowitz Floer homology depends on the choice of  $J_0$ , although this seems unlikely. We refer

in the following to the triple  $(V, \omega, J_0)$  as the geometrically bounded symplectic manifold. We often skip the reference to  $\omega$  and  $J_0$  and just mention V.

If  $a, b \notin \mho(\Sigma)$ ,  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}(\Sigma, V)$  meets the assumptions of Lemma 4.12, and  $J \in \mathcal{J}(\alpha, J_0)$  we introduce the subset of perturbations

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{V}}_a^b(\alpha,J) = \left\{ F \in \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha,J) : \mathcal{A}_F^\alpha(w) \notin \{a,b\}, \ \forall \ w \in \mathcal{C}_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) \right\}$$

where we refer to (35) for the definition of  $C_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}, J)$ . By the Theorem of Arzela-Ascoli  $\widetilde{\mathcal{V}}_a^b(\alpha, J)$  is an open subset of  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_a^b(\alpha, J)$ . Moreover, since  $a, b \notin \mathcal{O}(\Sigma)$  the zero perturbation is contained in  $\widetilde{\mathcal{V}}_a^b(\alpha, J)$ . Hence we abbreviate by

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_a^b(\alpha,J) \subset \widetilde{\mathcal{V}}_a^b(\alpha,J)$$

the connected component of  $\widetilde{\mathcal{V}}(\alpha, J)$  containing 0. We set

$$\mathcal{V}_a^b(\alpha, J) = \{ F \in \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_a^b(\alpha, J) : \mathcal{A}_F^\alpha \text{ Morse} \}.$$

By Proposition 4.11 and Lemma 4.12 the set  $\mathcal{V}_a^b(\alpha,J)$  is non-empty. Hence we pick  $F\in\mathcal{V}_a^b(\alpha,J)$  and define

$$RFH_a^b(\Sigma, V) = HF_a^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, J)$$

where the right-hand side was defined in (36). It is straightforward to check that this definition is independent of the choices of F, J and  $\alpha$ . For this we actually use that the space  $\mathcal{J}(\alpha, J_0)$  is connected.

There are canonical homomorphisms between Rabinowitz Floer homology groups

$$\pi^b_{a_2,a_1} \colon RFH^b_{a_1} \to RFH^b_{a_2}, \quad a_1 \le a_2 \le b,$$

and

$$\iota_a^{b_2,b_1}\colon RFH_a^{b_1}\to RFH_a^{b_2},\quad a\leq b_1\leq b_2.$$

These maps satisfy

$$\pi_{a_{3},a_{2}}^{b} \circ \pi_{a_{2},a_{1}}^{b} = \pi_{a_{3},a_{1}}^{b}, \qquad a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq a_{3} \leq b,$$

$$\iota_{a}^{b_{3},b_{2}} \circ \iota_{a}^{b_{2},b_{1}} = \iota_{a}^{b_{3},b_{1}}, \qquad a \leq b_{1} \leq b_{2} \leq b_{3},$$

$$\iota_{a_{2}}^{b_{2},b_{1}} \circ \pi_{a_{2},a_{1}}^{b_{1}} = \pi_{a_{2},a_{1}}^{b_{2}} \circ \iota_{a_{1}}^{b_{2},b_{1}}, \quad a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq b_{1} \leq b_{2}.$$
(37)

In particular, the Rabinowitz Floer homology groups together with these maps have the structure of a bidirect system of  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -vector spaces.

We next describe the construction of the map  $\pi^b_{a_2,a_1}$ . Assume that

$$a_1 < a_2 < b$$
  $a_1, a_2, b \notin \mho(\Sigma)$ .

We first pick a small stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda \in \Lambda_s(\Sigma, V)$ . We note that

We pick a  $(\frac{3}{5}, \epsilon)$ -admissible quintuple  $\alpha$  with  $\pi(\alpha) = \lambda$  and  $\epsilon \leq \frac{1}{\Im(a_1, b; \lambda)}$ . Note that because of (38) this quintuple meets the assumptions of Lemma 4.12 for  $(a_1, b)$  as well as for  $(a_2, b)$ . We introduce the closed interval

$$I(a_1, a_2, b; \lambda) = [\exists (a_2, b; \lambda) + 3, \exists (a_1, b; \lambda) + 4] \supset I(a_2, b; \lambda).$$

We set

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J) = \Big\{ F \in \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_{a_1}^b(\alpha,J) : ||\eta||_{\infty} \notin I(a_1,a_2,b;\lambda), \ \forall \ (v,\eta) \in \mathcal{M}_{a_2}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) \Big\}.$$

A similar reasoning as in Lemma 4.12 shows that  $\widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J)$  is an open set of  $C_c^\infty(V\times S^1)$  containing the zero perturbation. We define

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{V}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J) = \Big\{ F \in \widetilde{\mathcal{U}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J) : \mathcal{A}_F^\alpha(w) \notin \{a_1,a_2,b\}, \ \forall \ w \in \mathcal{C}_{a_1}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,J) \Big\}.$$

Again this is an open subset of  $C_c^{\infty}(V \times S^1)$  containing the zero perturbation. Let

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J)\subset \widetilde{\mathcal{V}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J)$$

be the connected component containing 0 and set

$$\mathcal{V}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J) = \{ F \in \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J) : \mathcal{A}_F^\alpha \text{ Morse} \}.$$

Note that  $\mathcal{V}^b_{a_2,a_1}(\alpha,J)$  is non-empty and satisfies

$$\mathcal{V}_{a_2,a_1}^b(\alpha,J) \subset \mathcal{V}_{a_1}^b(\alpha,J) \cap \mathcal{V}_{a_2}^b(\alpha,J).$$

We pick

$$F \in \mathcal{V}^b_{a_2,a_1}(\alpha,J).$$

Abbreviate

$$\mathcal{C}_{a_1}^{a_2}(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha,b)=\big\{w=(v,\eta)\in \operatorname{crit}_{a_1}^{a_2}(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha): |\eta|<\gimel(a_1,b;\lambda)+3\big\}.$$

Since  $a_2$  is not a critical value of  $\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha}$  and there is no critical point  $w=(v,\eta)\in \operatorname{crit}_{a_2}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha})\subset \mathcal{M}_{a_2}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha},J)$  with  $\eta\in I(a_1,a_2,b;\lambda)$ , we have a disjoint union

$$\mathcal{C}^b_{a_1}(\mathcal{A}^\alpha_F) = \mathcal{C}^b_{a_2}(\mathcal{A}^\alpha_F) \sqcup \mathcal{C}^{a_2}_{a_1}(\mathcal{A}^\alpha_F, b).$$

This leads to a direct sum of  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -vector spaces

$$CF_{a_1}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) = CF_{a_2}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha) \oplus CF_{a_1}^{a_2}(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha, b)$$

with

$$CF_{a_1}^{a_2}(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha},b) = \mathcal{C}_{a_1}^{a_2}(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha},b) \otimes \mathbb{Z}_2.$$

Let

$$p_{a_2,a_1}^b\colon CF_{a_1}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)\to CF_{a_2}^b(\mathcal{A}_F^\alpha)$$

be the projection along  $CF_{a_1}^{a_2}(\mathcal{A}_F^{\alpha},b)$ . Using the fact that the action is increasing along gradient flow lines we observe that the projection  $p_{a_2,a_1}^b$  commutes with the boundary operators and hence induces a homomorphism

$$\pi^b_{a_2,a_1}: HF^b_{a_1}(\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}_F,J) \to HF^b_{a_2}(\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}_F,J).$$

A usual homotopy argument shows that this homomorphism is independent of F,  $\alpha$ , and J and hence can be interpreted as homomorphism

$$\pi_{a_2,a_1}^b \colon RFH_{a_1}^b \to RFH_{a_2}^b.$$

The construction of the homomorphism

$$\iota_a^{b_2,b_1} \colon RFH_a^{b_1} \to RFH_a^{b_1}$$

is similar and will not be carried out here. We also omit the proof of (37).

Given the bidirect system of  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -vector spaces  $(RFH, \pi, \iota)$  we can extract out of it two Rabinowitz Floer homology groups

$$\overline{RFH} = \lim_{\substack{\longrightarrow \\ b \to \infty}} \lim_{\substack{\longleftarrow \\ a \to -\infty}} RFH_a^b$$

and

$$\underline{RFH} = \varprojlim_{a \to -\infty} \varinjlim_{b \to \infty} RFH_a^b.$$

Since inverse and direct limits do not necessarily commute it is an open problem if the two Rabinowitz Floer homology groups coincide. However, it is well known (see [53, page 215]) that there is a canonical homomorphism which takes account of the interchange of inverse and direct limits

$$\kappa \colon \overline{RFH} \to RFH.$$

In general the canonical homomorphism does not need to be an isomorphism, although we have no example where  $\kappa$  fails to be an isomorphism in Rabinowitz Floer homology. We finish this subsection by computing the Rabinowitz Floer homology groups in two easy examples.

**Theorem 4.14.** Suppose that  $\Sigma$  is a weakly tame, stable hypersurface in a symplectically aspherical, geometrically bounded, symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$ .

(i) Assume that there are no closed characteristics in  $\Sigma$  which are contractible in V, then

$$\overline{RFH}(\Sigma, V) = \underline{RFH}(\Sigma, V) = H(\Sigma; \mathbb{Z}_2)$$

where H denotes (ungraded) singular homology.

(ii) Assume that  $\Sigma$  is displaceable in V, then

$$\overline{RFH}(\Sigma, V) = \underline{RFH}(\Sigma, V) = \{0\}.$$

*Proof.* We first prove assertion (i). If there are no closed characteristics on  $\Sigma$  which are contractible in V, the unperturbed Rabinowitz action functional  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}$  is Morse-Bott with critical manifold given by  $\{(x,0)\}$  where  $x \in \Sigma$  is thought of as a constant loop. Since  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha}$  is constant on the critical manifold its homology is just the homology of the critical manifold, hence the homology of the hypersurface  $\Sigma$ .

We next show assertion (ii). A reasoning similar as in the proof of Theorem 4.9 shows that if  $d \ge e(\Sigma)$ , the displacement energy of  $\Sigma$ , and  $a \le b$ , then

$$\pi_{a+d,a}^{b+d} \circ \iota_a^{b+d,b} = 0 \colon RFH_a^b(\Sigma,V) \to RFH_{a+d}^{b+d}(\Sigma,V).$$

This implies the vanishing of the two Rabinowitz Floer homology groups.

#### 4.6 Invariance

In this subsection we show that Rabinowitz Floer homology is invariant under stable tame homotopies.

**Theorem 4.15.** Assume that  $S = (\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta})$  for  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  is a stable tame homotopy. Then there are isomorphisms

$$\overline{\Phi} = \overline{\Phi}_{\mathcal{S}} \colon \overline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V) \to \overline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V)$$

and

$$\underline{\Phi} = \underline{\Phi}^{\mathcal{S}} \colon \underline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V) \to \underline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V)$$

such that the following diagram commutes

$$\overline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V) \xrightarrow{\overline{\Phi}} \overline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V) \qquad (39)$$

$$\downarrow^{\kappa} \qquad \qquad \downarrow^{\kappa}$$

$$\underline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V) \xrightarrow{\underline{\Phi}} \underline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V).$$

*Proof.* Given a stable homotopy  $S = (\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta})$  there exists a smooth family of positive real numbers  $\sigma_{\zeta} > 0$ , such that  $\sigma_{\zeta} \lambda_{\zeta}$  is small for every  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  and there exists a smooth path  $\tau_{\zeta} \in \mathcal{T}_{\ell}(\Sigma_{\zeta}, \sigma_{\zeta} \lambda_{\zeta})$  of large tubular neighbourhoods and a smooth path  $I_{\zeta} \in \mathcal{I}_{s}(\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta})$  of small  $\omega_{\Sigma_{\zeta}}$ -compatible complex structures such that

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\Sigma_{\mathcal{C}}, \sigma_{\mathcal{C}}\lambda_{\mathcal{C}}, \tau_{\mathcal{C}}, I_{\mathcal{C}})$$

is a smooth path of stable quadruples. We further remark that the stable homotopy  $(\Sigma_{\zeta}, \sigma_{\zeta} \lambda_{\zeta})$  is still tame.

Since each path of stable quadruples can be obtained by concatenating short paths it actually suffices to prove the theorem only for short paths of stable quadruples. We need the following Lemma. We refer the reader to (14) for the definition of  $\mathcal{H}(\alpha^-, \alpha^+)$  and to Theorem 4.8 for the definition of  $\Delta(\frac{1}{2})$ .

**Lemma 4.16.** Assume that  $\mathfrak{P} = (\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta}, \tau_{\zeta}, I_{\zeta})$  for  $\zeta \in [0, 1]$  is a short path of stable quadruples such that  $(\Sigma_{\zeta}, \lambda_{\zeta})$  is tame with taming constant c and  $\mathfrak{P}$  is short in the sense that

$$\Delta(\mathfrak{P}) \le \min\left\{\frac{1}{144 \cdot \max\{1, c\}}, \Delta\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\right\}. \tag{40}$$

Then there exist admissible quintuples  $\alpha^-$  for  $\Sigma_0$  and  $\alpha^+$  for  $\Sigma_1$ , a time dependent Hamiltonian  $H \in \mathcal{H}(\alpha^-, \alpha^+)$ , and a time-dependent metric  $m = \{m_s\}_{s \in \mathbb{R}}$  on  $\mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R}$  which is constant for |s| large such that the following holds true. Suppose that  $w = (v, \eta) \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{L} \times \mathbb{R})$  is a gradient flow line of the time dependent gradient  $\nabla_{m_s} \mathcal{A}^{H_s}$  which converges asymptotically  $\lim_{s \to \pm \infty} w(s) = w^{\pm}$  to critical points of  $\mathcal{A}^{\alpha^{\pm}}$ , such that  $a = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha^-}(w^-)$  and  $b = \mathcal{A}^{\alpha^+}(w^+)$ . Then the following holds

- (i) If  $a \geq \frac{1}{9}$ , then  $b \geq \frac{a}{2}$ .
- (ii) If  $b \le -\frac{1}{9}$ , then  $a \le \frac{b}{2}$ .

*Proof.* We choose H as in Theorem 4.8. Combining tameness with Theorem 4.8 for  $\epsilon = \frac{1}{2}$  and using (40) we obtain

$$||\eta||_{\infty} \le 9\max\{c, 1\}|b - a| + 2. \tag{41}$$

Moreover, by letting  $\sigma$  tend to  $\infty$  in Step 1 of Theorem 4.8 we obtain

$$b \ge a - 2\Delta(\mathfrak{P})||\eta||_{\infty}.\tag{42}$$

From (40)-(42) we extract

$$b \ge a - \frac{|b-a|}{8} - \frac{1}{36}. (43)$$

To prove assertion (i) we first consider the case

$$|b| \le a, \quad a \ge \frac{1}{9}.$$

In this case we estimate

$$b \ge a - \frac{|a|}{4} - \frac{1}{36} = \frac{3a}{4} - \frac{1}{36} \ge \frac{a}{2}.$$

Hence to prove assertion (i) it suffices to exclude the case

$$-b \ge a \ge \frac{1}{9}. (44)$$

But in this case (43) leads to a contradiction in the following way

$$b \geq \frac{1}{9} - \frac{|b-a|}{8} - \frac{1}{36} \geq -\frac{|b-a|}{8} \geq \frac{b}{4}$$

implying that  $\frac{3b}{4} \ge 0$  and hence  $b \ge 0$  contradicting (44). This proves the first assertion.

To prove assertion (ii) we set

$$b' = -a, \quad a' = -b.$$

We note that if (43) holds for a and b, it also holds for b' and a'. Hence we get from assertion (i) the implication

$$-b \ge \frac{1}{9} \implies -a \ge -\frac{b}{2}$$

which is equivalent to assertion (ii). This finishes the proof of the Lemma.

**Proof of Theorem 4.15 continued:** In view of Lemma 4.16 we obtain for  $a \le -\frac{1}{9}$  and  $b \ge \frac{1}{9}$  homomorphisms

$$\Phi_a^b \colon RFH_a^{\frac{b}{2}}(\Sigma_0, V) \to RFH_{\frac{a}{2}}^b(\Sigma_1, V)$$

defined by counting gradient flow lines of the time dependent Rabinowitz action functional. Again to count gradient flow lines we have to choose small perturbations which make Rabinowitz action functional Morse and then take the count (possibly after a further abstract perturbation) of the essential part of the moduli space of gradient flow lines of the perturbed time dependent functional. These homomorphisms interchange the maps  $\pi$  and  $\iota$  and hence induce homomorphisms

$$\overline{\Phi} : \overline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V) \to \overline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V)$$

and

$$\Phi: \underline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V) \to \underline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V)$$

such that (39) commutes.

It remains to show that  $\overline{\Phi}$  and  $\underline{\Phi}$  are isomorphisms. By using the homotopy backwards we get homomorphisms

$$\Psi_a^b \colon RFH_a^{\frac{b}{2}}(\Sigma_1, V) \to RFH_{\frac{a}{2}}^b(\Sigma_0, V).$$

A standard homotopy of homotopy argument shows that for  $a \le -\frac{2}{9}$  and  $b \ge \frac{2}{9}$  the composition of  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  is given by

$$\Psi^b_{\frac{a}{2}}\circ\Phi^{\frac{b}{2}}_a=\pi^b_{\frac{a}{4},a}\circ\iota^{b,\frac{b}{4}}_a\colon RFH^{\frac{b}{4}}_a(\Sigma_0,V)\to RFH^b_{\frac{a}{4}}(\Sigma_0,V)$$

and analoguously

$$\Phi^b_{\frac{a}{2}} \circ \Psi^{\frac{b}{2}}_{a} = \pi^b_{\frac{a}{4},a} \circ \iota^{b,\frac{b}{4}}_{a} \colon RFH^{\frac{b}{4}}_{a}(\Sigma_1,V) \to RFH^{b}_{\frac{a}{4}}(\Sigma_1,V).$$

Hence we conclude that

$$\overline{\Psi}\circ\overline{\Phi}=\mathrm{id}|_{\overline{RFH}(\Sigma_0,V)},\quad \overline{\Phi}\circ\overline{\Psi}=\mathrm{id}|_{\overline{RFH}(\Sigma_1,V)}$$

and

$$\underline{\Psi} \circ \underline{\Phi} = \mathrm{id}|_{\underline{RFH}(\Sigma_0, V)}, \quad \underline{\Phi} \circ \underline{\Psi} = \mathrm{id}|_{\underline{RFH}(\Sigma_1, V)}.$$

This implies that  $\overline{\Phi}$  and  $\underline{\Phi}$  are isomorphisms with inverses

$$\overline{\Phi}^{-1} = \overline{\Psi}, \quad \underline{\Phi}^{-1} = \underline{\Psi}.$$

This finishes the proof of the theorem.

# 5 Mañé's critical values

In this section we summarize the main properties associated with the various Mañé's critical values. We also show that there are open sets of hypersurfaces with high energy which are not stable; however these are virtually contact, showing the need to consider the latter notion.

# 5.1 Definition and basic properties

As in the Introduction we consider the cotangent bundle  $\tau\colon T^*M\to M$  of a closed manifold M and the autonomous Hamiltonian system defined by a convex Hamiltonian

$$H(q,p) = \frac{1}{2}|p|^2 + U(q)$$

and a twisted symplectic form

$$\omega_{\sigma} = \omega = dp \wedge dq + \tau^* \sigma.$$

Here  $dp \wedge dq$  is the canonical symplectic form in canonical coordinates (q,p) on  $T^*M$ , |p| denotes the dual norm of a Riemannian metric g on M,  $U \colon M \to \mathbb{R}$  is a smooth potential, and  $\sigma$  is a closed 2-form on M. This Hamiltonian system describes the motion of a particle on M subject to the conservative force  $-\nabla U$  and the magnetic field  $\sigma$ . In local coordinates  $q_1, \ldots, q_n$  on M and dual coordinates  $p_1, \ldots, p_n$  the Hamiltonian system is given by

$$\dot{q}_i = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i},$$

$$\dot{p}_i = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i} + \sum_{j=1}^n \sigma_{ij}(q) \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_j},$$

where

$$\sigma = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^{n} \sigma_{ij}(q) dq_i \wedge dq_j, \qquad \sigma_{ij} = -\sigma_{ji}.$$

In particular, the q-components of the Hamiltonian vector field  $X_H$  are independent of  $\sigma$ ,

$$X_H = (H_p, *), \qquad H_p = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}.$$

Let  $\Pi \colon \widehat{M} \to M$  be a cover of M and suppose that  $\Pi^*\sigma$  is *exact*. The Hamiltonian H lifts to Hamiltonian  $\widehat{H}$  and we define the  $Ma\widetilde{n}\acute{e}$  critical value of the cover as:

$$c(\widehat{H}) := \inf_{\theta} \sup_{q \in \widehat{M}} \widehat{H}(q, \theta_q),$$

where the infimum is taken over all 1-forms  $\theta$  on  $\widehat{M}$  with  $d\theta = \Pi^* \sigma$ .

If  $\overline{M}$  is a cover of  $\widehat{M}$ , then clearly  $c(\overline{H}) \leq c(\widehat{H})$  and equality holds if  $\overline{M}$  is a finite cover of  $\widehat{M}$ .

The critical value may also be defined in Lagrangian terms. Consider the Lagrangian on  $T\widehat{M}$  given by

$$\widehat{L}(q, v) = \frac{1}{2}|v|^2 - U(q) + \theta_q(v),$$

where  $\theta$  is any primitive of  $\Pi^*\sigma$ . It is well known that the extremals of  $\widehat{L}$ , i.e., the solutions of the Euler-Lagrange equations of  $\widehat{L}$ ,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial \widehat{L}}{\partial v}(q,v) = \frac{\partial \widehat{L}}{\partial q}(q,v)$$

coincide with the projection to  $\widehat{M}$  of the orbits of the Hamiltonian  $\widehat{H}$ . The action of the Lagrangian  $\widehat{L}$  on an absolutely continuous curve  $\gamma \colon [a,b] \to \widehat{M}$  is defined by

$$A_{\widehat{L}}(\gamma) = \int_a^b \widehat{L}(\gamma(t), \dot{\gamma}(t)) dt.$$

We define the Mañé critical value of the Lagrangian  $\widehat{L}$  as (this was Mañé's original definition):

 $c(\widehat{L})=\inf\{k\in\mathbb{R}:\ A_{\widehat{L}+k}(\gamma)\geq 0\ \text{for any absolutely continuous closed curve}\ \gamma$ 

defined on any closed interval [0,T] }.

Note that  $c(\widehat{L})$  may depend on the primitive  $\theta$  chosen, but it will remain unchanged for all primitives of the form  $\theta + df$ , thus it could only change if we consider another primitive  $\theta'$  such that  $\theta - \theta'$  determines a non-zero class in  $H^1(\widehat{M}, \mathbb{R})$ . The relationship between the Lagrangian and Hamiltonian critical values is given by (cf. [8, 20]):

$$c(\widehat{H}) = \inf_{[\varpi] \in H^1(\widehat{M}, \mathbb{R})} c(\widehat{L} - \varpi).$$

There are two covers which are distinguished: the universal cover  $\pi \colon \widetilde{M} \to M$  and the abelian cover  $\pi_0 \colon M_0 \to M$ . The latter is defined as the cover of M whose fundamental group is the kernel of the Hurewicz homomorphism

 $\pi_1(M) \mapsto H_1(M, \mathbb{R})$  (we could also take coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ; this will not alter the discussion below since critical values are unchanged by finite covers). We denote the lifts of H to  $\widetilde{M}$  resp.  $M_0$  by  $\widetilde{H}$  resp.  $H_0$  and the corresponding Mañé critical values (when defined) by

$$c := c(\widetilde{H}) = c(\widetilde{L}), \qquad c_0 := c(H_0) = c(L_0).$$

The critical value  $c=c(\widetilde{H})=c(\widetilde{L})$  is the one given in the Introduction. We note here some of its properties:

- (i)  $c < \infty$  if and only if  $\pi^* \sigma$  has a bounded primitive (with respect to the lifted Riemannian metric);
- (ii) if M admits a metric of negative curvature, any closed 2-form  $\sigma$  has bounded primitives in  $\widetilde{M}$  [33];
- (iii) if  $[\sigma] \in H^2(M, \mathbb{R})$  is non-zero and  $\pi_1(M)$  is amenable <sup>4</sup>,  $c = \infty$  ([33], see also [60, Corollary 5.4]).

**Lemma 5.1.** For any k > c, the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is virtually contact.

*Proof.* If k > c we may choose  $\varepsilon > 0$  and a primitive  $\theta$  of  $\pi^* \sigma$  such that

$$\varepsilon + |\theta_q| \le \sqrt{2(k - \widetilde{U}(q))}$$
 (45)

for all  $q \in \widetilde{M}$ .

Let  $\lambda$  be the Liouville form on  $\widetilde{M}$ . Then we may write  $\widetilde{\omega} = d(\lambda + \widetilde{\tau}^*\theta)$ . Since  $X_{\widetilde{H}} = (\widetilde{H}_p, *)$ , on  $\widetilde{\Sigma}_k$  we have

$$(\lambda + \widetilde{\tau}^* \theta)(X_{\widetilde{H}}) = |p|^2 + \theta_q(\widetilde{H}_p) = 2(k - \widetilde{U}(q)) + \theta_q(\widetilde{H}_p). \tag{46}$$

But  $\theta_q(\widetilde{H}_p) \ge -|\theta_q|\sqrt{2(k-\widetilde{U}(q))}$  for all  $q \in \widetilde{M}$ . It follows from (45) and (46) that

$$\begin{split} (\lambda + \widetilde{\tau}^* \theta)(X_{\widetilde{H}}) &\geq 2(k - \widetilde{U}(q)) - |\theta_q| \sqrt{2(k - \widetilde{U}(q))} \\ &\geq \sqrt{2(k - \widetilde{U}(q))} \left( \sqrt{2(k - \widetilde{U}(q))} - |\theta_q| \right) \\ &\geq \varepsilon^2. \end{split}$$

On the other hand (45) also implies that there is a constant C > 0 such that

$$\sup_{(q,p) \in \widetilde{\Sigma_k}} |(\lambda + \widetilde{\tau}^* \theta)_{(q,p)}| < C$$

and thus  $\Sigma_k$  is virtually contact.

 $<sup>^4</sup>$ A group G is amenable e.g. if it is abelian, solvable or nilpotent. If G contains a free subgroup on two generators (which is the case e.g. for the fundamental group of a closed surface of genus at least 2) it is not amenable.

# 5.2 Hyperbolic spaces

The results in this subsection are well known; we include them here for the reader's convenience (cf. [29]). Let  $\Gamma$  be a cocompact lattice of  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ . The standard horocycle flow  $h_t$  is given by the right action of the one-parameter subgroup

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

on  $\Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ . The horocycle flow is known to be uniquely ergodic [28]. Morever, it has zero topological entropy since

$$\phi_t^0 \circ h_s = h_{se^{-t}} \circ \phi_t^0$$

for all  $s,t\in\mathbb{R},$  where  $\phi^0$  is the geodesic flow given by the one-parameter subgroup

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc} e^{t/2} & 0\\ 0 & e^{-t/2} \end{array}\right).$$

(The relation  $\phi_t^0 \circ h_s = h_{se^{-t}} \circ \phi_t^0$  implies that for any t, the flows  $s \mapsto h_s$  and  $s \mapsto h_{se^{-t}}$  are conjugate and thus they must have the same entropy. But for  $t \neq 0$ , this forces the entropy of  $h_s$  to be zero.)

In fact,  $h_t$  parametrizes the strong stable manifolds of  $\phi^0$ . A matrix X in  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  gives rise to a flow  $\phi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  by setting

$$\phi_t(\Gamma g) = \Gamma g e^{tX}.$$

The geodesic and horocycle flows are just particular cases of these algebraic flows. Consider the following path of matrices in  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$ :

$$\mathbb{R}\ni s\mapsto X_s:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}1/2&0\\0&-1/2\end{array}\right)+s\left(\begin{array}{cc}0&1/2\\-1/2&0\end{array}\right).$$

The flows  $\phi^s$  on  $\Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  associated with the matrices  $X_s$  can be interpreted as magnetic flows. Since  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  acts by isometries on the hyperbolic plane  $\mathbb{H}^2$ ,  $M:=\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}^2$  is a compact hyperbolic surface provided  $\Gamma$  acts without fixed points, and the unit sphere bundle SM of M can be identified with  $\Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ . A simple calculation shows that  $\phi^s$  is the Hamiltonian flow of the Hamiltonian  $H(x,v)=\frac{1}{2}|v|_x^2$  with respect to the twisted symplectic form on TM given by

$$\omega_s = d\alpha - s\,\pi^*\sigma,$$

where  $\sigma$  is the area form of M,  $\pi\colon TM\to M$  is the canonical projection and  $\alpha$  is the Liouville 1-form that generates the geodesic flow of M. For  $s=0,\,\phi^0$  is the geodesic flow and for  $s=1,\,\phi^1$  is the flow induced by the one-parameter subgroup with matrix on  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  given by

$$X_1 = \left( \begin{array}{cc} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ -1/2 & -1/2 \end{array} \right).$$

Observe that there exists an element  $c \in PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  such that

$$c^{-1}X_1c = \left(\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 1\\ 0 & 0 \end{array}\right).$$

Explicitly

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \begin{array}{cc} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{array} \right).$$

Then the map  $f \colon \Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R}) \to \Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  given by  $f(\Gamma g) = \Gamma gc$  conjugates  $\phi^1$  and h, i.e.  $f \circ \phi^1_t = h_t \circ f$ . (In fact, any matrix in  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  with determinant zero will give rise to a flow which is conjugate to  $h_t$  or  $h_{-t}$ . So, up to orientation, there is just one algebraic horocycle flow.) Note that det  $X_s = -\frac{1}{4}(1-s^2)$ , so for |s| < 1, the flow  $\phi^s$  is conjugate to the geodesic flow  $\phi^0$ , up to a constant time scaling by  $\sqrt{1-s^2}$ . Hence the magnetic flows  $\phi^s$  are just geodesic flows, but with entropy  $\sqrt{1-s^2}$ . Similarly, for |s| > 1,  $\phi^s$  is up to a constant time scaling conjugate to the flow generated by

$$V := \left( \begin{array}{cc} 0 & 1/2 \\ -1/2 & 0 \end{array} \right),$$

which is actually the fibrewise circle flow.

In the discussion above we have kept the hypersurface SM (k=1/2) fixed and changed  $\sigma$  by  $s\sigma$ . This was just done for convenience, since the flow  $\phi^s$  on SM is equivalent to the Hamiltonian flow on  $\Sigma_k$  with respect to  $\sigma$ , where  $s^2=1/2k$ . Note that  $\omega_s$  restricted to SM has a primitive given by  $\psi_s:=\alpha-s\gamma$ , where  $\gamma$  is the unique left-invariant 1-form which takes the value one on V and zero on

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc} 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/2 \end{array}\right), \quad \left(\begin{array}{cc} 0 & -1/2 \\ -1/2 & 0 \end{array}\right).$$

The 1-form  $\gamma$  is also the connection 1-form determined by the Levi-Civita connection of the hyperbolic metric. Also note that  $\psi_s(X_s) = 1 - s^2$  and thus  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type for all  $k \neq 1/2$  (with opposite orientation for k < 1/2).

The fact that the Mañé critical value is c=1/2 can be seen as follows. The form  $y^{-1}dx$  is a primitive of the area form  $y^{-2}dx \wedge dy$  and has norm 1. This shows that  $c \leq 1/2$ . To see that in fact c=1/2 one performs a calculation with geodesic circles exactly as the one in the proof of Lemma 6.11 below.

Summarizing, we have obtained the picture described in the Introduction:

- For k > 1/2, the dynamics is Anosov and conjugate (after rescaling) to the underlying geodesic flow. The energy levels are contact.
- At the Mañé critical value k = 1/2 we hit the horocycle flow. There are no closed orbits and the level is unstable.
- For k < 1/2 all orbits are closed and contractible. Energy levels are contact but with opposite orientation.

A very similar picture is obtained if we take compact quotients of complex hyperbolic space  $\mathbb{H}^n_{\mathbf{C}}$  with its Kähler form, see [22, Appendix]. If we normalize the Kähler structure  $(g,\sigma)$  to have holomorphic sectional curvature -1 (so the sectional curvature K satisfies  $-1 \le K \le -1/4$ ), then the Mañé critical value is c=1/2,  $\Sigma_k$  is Anosov for k>1/2, for k=1/2 one obtains a unipotent ergodic flow without closed orbits, and for k<1/2 all orbits are closed and contractible. However, there is an essential difference between the case n=1 and  $n\ge 2$ . As we saw above, for n=1 the restriction of the symplectic form to  $\Sigma_k$  is exact. This is no longer the case for  $n\ge 2$ . Nevertheless it is easy to see that for k>1/2,  $\Sigma_k$  is stable. Indeed, since the flow is algebraic, the strong stable and unstable bundles are real analytic and together they span a hyperplane bundle  $\xi$  in  $\Sigma_k$  invariant under the magnetic flow. If we define a 1-form  $\lambda$  such that  $\lambda(X_H)=1$  and  $\xi=\ker\lambda$ , then  $\lambda$  is a stabilizing 1-form. Observe that in this case  $d\lambda$  and  $\omega$  span a 2-dimensional space of flow invariant 2-forms. For n=1 this space is just one dimensional.

### 5.3 The exact case

Now we focus on the case that  $\sigma$  is exact. We begin with the case  $\sigma = 0$ .

**Lemma 5.2.** Suppose  $\sigma = 0$ . Then  $c = \max U$  and any regular level set  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type.

Proof. If  $\sigma=0$  the infimum in the definition of  $c=c(\hat{H})$  is attained for  $\theta=0$ , hence  $c=\max U$  and k=c is a singular value of H. If  $k>c=\max U$ , then  $\Sigma_k$  encloses the Lagrangian zero section and is thus of contact type (with the Liouville form  $\lambda$  as contact form). Suppose then k< c is a regular value. A quick glance at the proof of the previous lemma shows that  $\lambda(X_H)=|p|^2\geq 0$ . Note that the set  $\{p=0\}\cap\Sigma_k$  does not contain any set invariant under the flow of  $X_H$  since  $X_H(q,0)=(0,*)\neq 0$ . Therefore, for any invariant Borel probability measure  $\mu$  we have

$$\int_{\Sigma_k} \lambda(X_H) \, d\mu > 0$$

and  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type by Theorem 2.7. Alternatively, the condition  $X_H(q,0) = (0,*) \neq 0$  allows us to pick a function  $f \colon T^*M \to \mathbb{R}$  with  $df(X_H) > 0$  along  $\{p = 0\} \cap \Sigma_k$ , hence (for f small)  $(\lambda + df)(X_H) > 0$  and  $\lambda + df$  is a contact form on  $\Sigma_k$ .

More generally, we have

**Lemma 5.3.** A closed 2-form  $\sigma$  on M is exact if and only if  $\pi_0^*\sigma$  has a bounded primitive. The Mañé critical value  $c_0$  associated to the abelian cover  $\pi_0 \colon M_0 \to M$  is given by the formula in the Introduction

$$c_0 = c(H) = \inf_{\theta} \sup_{q \in M} H(q, \theta_q),$$

where the infimum is taken over all 1-forms  $\theta$  on M with  $d\theta = \sigma$  (and  $c_0 = \infty$  if  $\sigma$  is not exact). If  $k > c_0$  the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type.

*Proof.* The first two statements follow from the fact that the deck transformation group of the cover  $\pi_0 \colon M_0 \to M$  is abelian, hence amenable, so a bounded primitive of  $\pi_0^* \sigma$  can be averaged to a primitive of  $\sigma$  on M, see [33] and [60, Corollary 5.4]. The proof of the last statement is analogous to the proof of Lemma 5.1 (but simpler).

*Remark.* Note that in the last two lemmas we actually obtain *restricted* contact type.

Relation to Mather's  $\alpha$ -function. Suppose now that  $\sigma$  is exact and fix a primitive  $\theta$  in M and consequently a Lagrangian L. As Mañé pointed out [48, 19], there is a close relationship between the critical values and Mather's minimizing measures [49]. Mather's  $\alpha$  function is a convex superlinear function  $\alpha$ :  $H^1(M,\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}$  given by

$$\alpha([\varpi]) = -\min_{\mu} \int_{TM} (L - \varpi) \, d\mu$$

where  $\mu$  runs over all Borel probability measures on TM invariant under the Euler-Lagrange flow of L. It turns out that

$$\alpha([\varpi]) = c(L - \varpi)$$

and therefore

$$c_0 = c(H) = \min_{[\varpi] \in H^1(M,\mathbb{R})} \alpha([\varpi])$$

(see [61, 20]). The value  $c_0 = c(H)$  is also called the *strict critical value*. We now summarize some of the main properties of  $c_0$ :

- (i)  $c_0 = c(L_0) = c(H_0)$ , where  $L_0, H_0$  are the lifts of L, H to the abelian cover  $M_0$  [61];
- (ii) if  $M \neq \mathbb{T}^2$  and  $c < k \leq c_0$ , then  $\Sigma_k$  is not of contact type [18, Theorem B.1];
- (iii) there is a characterization of  $c_0$  in terms of Symplectic Topology [62]: it is the infimum of the values of k such that the region bounded by  $\Sigma_k$  contains a Lagrangian submanifold Hamiltonian isotopic to  $gr(-\theta)$ . (in fact the whole of Mather's  $\alpha$  function can be characterized in a similar way just by considering Lagrangian submanifolds with a fixed Liouville class):
- (iv) if  $\pi_1(M)$  is amenable,  $c = c_0$  [24].

The gap between c and  $c_0$ . The inequality  $c \le c_0$  could be strict. Examples of this phenomenon were given for the first time in [61]:

**Theorem 5.4** ([61]). On a closed oriented surface M of genus  $\geq 2$  there exists a metric of negative curvature and an exact 2-form  $\sigma$  such that  $c < c_0$ . Moreover, there exists an open interval  $I \subset (c, c_0)$  such that all level sets  $\Sigma_k$  with  $k \in I$  are Anosov. In particular, these levels are virtually contact but not stable.

Proof. All statements except the last one are proven in [61]. The levels  $k \in I$  are virtually contact by Lemma 5.1. On the other hand, suppose a level  $k \in I$  is stable and let  $\lambda$  be a stabilizing 1-form. The transitivity of the flow and the fact that dim M=2 easily imply the existence of a constant a such that  $d\lambda=a\omega$ . If  $a\neq 0$  we obtain a contradiction with the fact that these energy levels cannot be contact by property (ii) above. If a=0, we obtain a contradiction with Corollary 2.10.

Next we describe a large class of manifolds exhibiting a large gap between c and  $c_0$ . Consider a closed manifold M with a closed 2-form  $\Omega$  such that  $0 \neq [\Omega] \in H^2(M,\mathbb{Z})$ . Suppose moreover that  $\Omega$  has a bounded primitive in  $\widetilde{M}$ . Consider a circle bundle  $p \colon P \to M$  with Euler class  $[\Omega]$  and  $\psi$  a connection 1-form with  $p^*\Omega = -d\psi$ . Fix any Riemannian metric h on M and consider for  $\varepsilon > 0$  the metric  $g_{\varepsilon}$  on P given by

$$g_{\varepsilon}(u,v) = \varepsilon^{-1}h(dp(u),dp(v)) + \psi(u)\psi(v).$$

**Theorem 5.5.** For  $H = \frac{1}{2}|p|_{\varepsilon}^2$  on  $T^*P$  and  $\sigma = -d\psi$  the strict Mañé critical value satisfies  $c_0(g_{\varepsilon}, \sigma) = 1/2$  for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , but  $c(g_{\varepsilon}, \sigma) \to 0$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

*Proof.* Since  $[\Omega] \neq 0$ , the Gysin sequence of the circle bundle  $p \colon P \to M$  shows that  $p^* \colon H^1(M,\mathbb{R}) \to H^1(P,\mathbb{R})$  is an isomorphism. Thus the orbits of the circle action are all null-homologous in  $H_1(P;\mathbb{R})$ . Let V be the vector field dual to  $\psi$  and note that  $g_{\varepsilon}(V,V) = 1$ . Clearly this implies  $c_0(g_{\varepsilon},\sigma) \leq 1/2$ . To show that equality holds we consider the Lagrangian on P given by

$$L(q, v) = \frac{1}{2} |v|_{\varepsilon}^2 - \psi_q(v),$$

and we note that the action  $A_{L+k}$  of the orbits of V equals  $2\pi(k-1/2)$ . Since the orbits of V are null-homologous in  $H_1(P;\mathbb{R})$  and this action is negative if k < 1/2 we must have  $c_0(q_{\varepsilon}, \sigma) = 1/2$ .

Let  $\pi\colon \widetilde{M} \to M$  be the universal cover and  $\hat{p}\colon \pi^*P \to \widetilde{M}$ , the pull-back bundle. Let  $\hat{\pi}\colon \pi^*P \to P$  be the obvious map such that  $p\circ\hat{\pi}=\pi\circ\hat{p}$ . Clearly  $\hat{\pi}$  is a covering map of P. By hypothesis, we may write  $\pi^*\Omega=d\theta$ , where  $|\theta|_{\infty}=\sup_{a\in\widetilde{M}}|\theta_q|<\infty$ . Note that

$$d\hat{p}^*\theta = -d\hat{\pi}^*\psi = \hat{\pi}^*\sigma$$

and that

$$|\theta_q|_{\varepsilon} = \mathrm{min}_{|v|_{\varepsilon}=1} |\theta_q(v)| = \varepsilon \, \mathrm{min}_{|v|=1} |\theta_q(v)| = \varepsilon \, |\theta_q|.$$

Thus

$$c(g_{\varepsilon}, \sigma) \leq \frac{\varepsilon |\theta|_{\infty}^2}{2} \longrightarrow 0 \text{ as } \varepsilon \to 0.$$

Later on in Section 6 we shall see another very explicit example which together with the preceding result suggests that the gap between c and  $c_0$  is rather frequent on manifolds with non-amenable fundamental groups.

# 5.4 Instability for large energies when $[\sigma] \neq 0$

The purpose of this subsection is to show that when  $[\sigma] \neq 0$ , there can be hypersurfaces  $\Sigma_k$  which are not stable for any sufficiently large k. More precisely, we will prove:

**Theorem 5.6.** Let (M,g) be a closed Riemannian manifold of even dimension different from two whose sectional curvature satisfies the pinching condition  $-4 \le K < -1$ . Let  $\sigma$  be a closed 2-form with  $[\sigma] \ne 0$ . Then for any k sufficiently large, the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is not stable.

Remark. Note that these levels are actually virtually contact by Lemma 5.1 and the fact that  $\sigma$  has bounded primitives on the universal cover of M.

The ideas for the proof of this theorem come from [25, 26, 34, 41].

We start with a preliminary discussion on Anosov Hamiltonian structures.

Recall that the flow  $\phi_t$  of a vector field F on a manifold  $\Sigma$  is Anosov if there is a splitting  $T\Sigma = \mathbb{R}F \oplus E^s \oplus E^u$  and positive constants  $\lambda$  and C such that for all  $x \in \Sigma$ 

$$|d_x \phi_t(v)| \le Ce^{-\lambda t} |v| \text{ for } v \in E^s \text{ and } t \ge 0,$$
  
 $|d_x \phi_{-t}(v)| \le Ce^{-\lambda t} |v| \text{ for } v \in E^u \text{ and } t \ge 0.$ 

If an Anosov vector field F is rescaled by a positive function its flow remains Anosov [3, 59]. It will be useful for us to know how the bundles  $E^s$  and  $E^u$  change when we rescale F by a smooth positive function  $r \colon \Sigma \to \mathbb{R}_+$ . Let  $\tilde{\phi}$  be the flow of rF and  $\tilde{E}^s$  its stable bundle. Then (cf. [59])

$$\tilde{E}^{s}(x) = \{ v + z(x, v)F(x) : v \in E^{s}(x) \}, \tag{47}$$

where z(x, v) is a continuous 1-form (i.e. linear in v and continuous in x). Moreover, if we let l = l(t, x) be (for fixed x) the inverse of the diffeomorphism

$$t \mapsto \int_0^t r(\phi_s(x))^{-1} ds$$

then

$$d\tilde{\phi}_t(v + z(x, v)F(x)) = d\phi_l(v) + z(\phi_l(v), d\phi_l(v))F(\phi_l(x)). \tag{48}$$

There is a similar expression for  $\tilde{E}^u$ . It is clear from the discussion above that the weak bundles  $\mathbb{R}F \oplus E^s$  and  $\mathbb{R}F \oplus E^u$  do not change under rescaling of F (the strong bundles  $E^{s,u}$  are indeed affected by rescaling as we have just seen).

Let  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  be a Hamiltonian structure. We say that the structure is Anosov if the flow of any vector field F spanning  $\ker \omega$  is Anosov.

We say that an Anosov Hamiltonian structure satisfies the 1/2-pinching condition or that it is 1-bunched [35, 36] if for any vector field F spanning  $\ker \omega$  with flow  $\phi_t$  there are functions  $\mu_f, \mu_s \colon \Sigma \times \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}_+$  such that

- $\lim_{t\to\infty} \sup_{x\in\Sigma} \frac{\mu_s(x,t)^2}{\mu_f(x,t)} = 0;$
- $\mu_f(x,t)|v| \le |d\phi_t(v)| \le \mu_s(x,t)|v|$  for all  $x \in \Sigma$ , t > 0 and  $v \in E^s(x)$ , and  $\mu_f(x,t)|v| \le |d\phi_{-t}(v)| \le \mu_s(x,t)|v|$  for all  $x \in \Sigma$ , t > 0 and  $v \in E^u(\phi_t x)$ .

We remark that the 1/2-pinching condition is invariant under rescaling. Indeed, consider the flow  $\tilde{\phi}_t$  of rF. It is clear from (47) and (48) that there is a positive constant  $\kappa$  such that

$$\frac{1}{\kappa}\mu_f(x, l(t, x))|\tilde{v}| \le |d\tilde{\phi}_t(\tilde{v})| \le \kappa\mu_s(x, l(t, x))|\tilde{v}|$$

for t > 0 and  $\tilde{v} \in \tilde{E}^s$  (with a similar expression for  $\tilde{E}^u$ ). We know that given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists T > 0 such that for all  $x \in \Sigma$  and all t > T we have

$$\frac{\mu_s(x,t)^2}{\mu_f(x,t)} < \varepsilon.$$

On the other hand, there exists a>0 such that  $l(t,x)\geq at$  for all  $x\in\Sigma$  and t>0. Hence for all t>T/a we have

$$\frac{\mu_s(x, l(t, x))^2}{\mu_f(x, l(t, x))} < \varepsilon$$

for all  $x \in \Sigma$ . Therefore

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \sup_{x \in \Sigma} \frac{\mu_s(x, l(t, x))^2}{\mu_f(x, l(t, x))} = 0$$

and thus  $\tilde{\phi}_t$  is also 1/2-pinched.

Hence the Anosov property as well as the 1/2-pinching condition are invariant under rescaling and thus intrinsic properties of the Hamiltonian structure. One of the main consequences of the 1/2-pinching condition is that the weak bundles  $\mathbb{R}F \oplus E^s$  and  $\mathbb{R}F \oplus E^u$  are of class  $C^1$  [36, Theorem 5] (see also [37]).

Suppose now  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  is a *stable* Anosov Hamiltonian structure satisfying the 1/2-pinching condition and let  $\lambda$  be the stabilizing 1-form and R the Reeb vector field. Invariance under the flow implies that  $\omega$  and  $\lambda$  both vanish on  $E^s$  and

 $E^u$ . Since the flow  $\phi_t$  of R is Anosov and  $E^s \oplus E^u = \ker \lambda$  which is  $C^{\infty}$ , it is clear that  $E^s$  and  $E^u$  must be  $C^1$  since  $E^{s,u} = (\mathbb{R}F \oplus E^{s,u}) \cap \ker \lambda$ . Under these conditions we can introduce the *Kanai connection* [41] which is defined as follows.

Let I be the (1,1)-tensor on  $\Sigma$  given by I(v) = -v for  $v \in E^s$ , I(v) = v for  $v \in E^u$  and I(R) = 0. Consider the symmetric non-degenerate bilinear form given by

$$h(X,Y) := \omega(X,IY) + \lambda \otimes \lambda(X,Y).$$

The pseudo-Riemannian metric h is of class  $C^1$  and thus there exists a unique  $C^0$  affine connection  $\nabla$  such that:

- (i) h is parallel with respect to  $\nabla$ ;
- (ii)  $\nabla$  has torsion  $\omega \otimes R$ .

This connection has the following desirable properties [26, 41]:

- The connection is invariant under  $\phi_t$ ;
- The Anosov splitting is invariant under  $\nabla$ : if X is any section of  $E^{s,u}$ ,  $\nabla_v X \in E^{s,u}$  for any v;
- the restriction of  $\nabla$  to the weak stable and unstable manifolds (i.e. leaves of the weak stable and unstable foliations) is flat;
- parallel transport along curves on weak stable/unstable manifolds coincide with the holonomy transport determined by the stable/unstable foliations.

The other good consequence of the 1/2-pinching condition, besides  $C^1$  smoothness of the bundles, is the following lemma (cf. [41, Lemma 3.2]).

**Lemma 5.7.**  $\nabla(d\lambda) = 0$ .

*Proof.* Suppose  $\tau$  is any invariant (0,3)-tensor annihilated by R. We claim that  $\tau$  must vanish. To see this, consider for example a triple of vectors  $(v_1, v_2, v_3)$  where  $v_1, v_2 \in E^s$  but  $v_3 \in E^u$ . Then there is a constant C > 0 such that

$$|\tau_x(v_1, v_2, v_3)| = |\tau_{\phi_t x}(d\phi_t(v_1), d\phi_t(v_2), d\phi_t(v_3))|$$
  

$$\leq C\mu_s(x, t)^2 \mu_f(x, t)^{-1} |v_1| |v_2| |v_3|.$$

By the 1/2-pinching condition the last expression tends to zero as  $t \to \infty$  and therefore  $\tau_x(v_1, v_2, v_3) = 0$ . The same will happen for other possible triples  $(v_1, v_2, v_3)$  when we let  $t \to \pm \infty$ .

Since  $d\lambda$  and  $\nabla$  are  $\phi_t$ -invariant, so is  $\nabla(d\lambda)$ . Since  $i_R d\lambda = 0$ ,  $\nabla(d\lambda)$  is also annihilated by R (to see that  $\nabla_R(d\lambda) = 0$  use that  $d\lambda$  is  $\phi_t$ -invariant and that  $\nabla_R = L_R$ ). Hence by the previous argument applied to  $\tau = \nabla(d\lambda)$  we conclude that  $\nabla(d\lambda) = 0$  as desired.

Since  $\omega$  is non-degenerate, there exists a smooth bundle map  $E \colon E^s \oplus E^u \to E^s \oplus E^u$  such that for sections X, Y of  $E^s \oplus E^u$ 

$$d\lambda(X,Y) = \omega(LX,Y) = \omega(X,LY).$$

The map L is invariant under  $\phi_t$  and preserves the decomposition  $E^s \oplus E^u$ , i.e.  $L = L^s + L^u$ , where  $L^s \colon E^s \to E^s$  and  $L^u \colon E^u \to E^u$ . In particular, L commutes with I.

Suppose now dim  $\Sigma = 2n-1$ , where n is an even integer. Since dim  $E^s = n-1$  is odd,  $L_x^s$  admits a real eigenvalue  $\rho$  (note that by transitivity of  $\phi_t$ , the characteristic polynomial of  $L_x^s$  is independent of  $x \in \Sigma$ ). Let

$$H(x) := \{ v \in E^s(x) : L_x^s v = \rho v \}.$$

Since  $\nabla(d\lambda) = 0$  (Lemma 5.7), H(x) is invariant under the parallel transport of  $\nabla$  and thus  $x \mapsto H(x)$  is a  $C^1$  subbundle of  $E^s$ .

Let  $W^s(x)$  be the strong stable manifold through x. We note that the restriction of H to  $W^s(x)$  is integrable. Indeed, let X and Y be parallel sections of  $E^s$  over  $W^s(x)$  (such sections must be  $C^1$ ) and observe that since  $\nabla$  has zero torsion on  $E^s$  we have  $[X,Y] = \nabla_X Y - \nabla_Y X = 0$ .

The maximal integral submanifolds of H on  $W^s(x)$  define a foliation of class  $C^1$  on  $W^s(x)$  and thus a foliation  $\mathcal{F}$  of class  $C^1$  on  $\Sigma$ .

Proof of Theorem 5.6. Suppose the sectional curvature K of a Riemannian metric satisfies  $-A^2 \leq K \leq -a^2$  for some positive constants a and A. Then, comparison theorems show that [43, Theorem 3.2.17] (see also [44, Proposition 3.2]) there is a constant C > 0 such that

$$\frac{1}{C}|v|e^{-At} \le |d_x\phi_t(v)| \le C|v|e^{-at} \text{ for } v \in E^s \text{ and } t \ge 0,$$
(49)

$$\frac{1}{C}|v|e^{-At} \le |d_x\phi_{-t}(v)| \le C|v|e^{-at} \text{ for } v \in E^u \text{ and } t \ge 0,$$
 (50)

where  $\phi_t$  is the geodesic flow of the Riemannian metric. If we let  $\mu_s = Ce^{-at}$  and  $\mu_f = \frac{1}{C}e^{-At}$  we see that  $\phi_t$  is 1/2-pinched as long as A < 2a. Therefore the geodesic flow of a metric whose sectional curvature satisfies  $-4 \le K < -1$  is 1/2-pinched. For sufficiently large k,  $(\Sigma_k, \omega_\sigma)$  is an Anosov Hamiltonian structure since it can be seen as a perturbation of the geodesic flow. In fact it is also 1/2-pinched. This can be seen as follows. An equivalent claim is that  $(\Sigma_{1/2}, \omega_{s\sigma})$  is 1/2-pinched for small s. An inspection of the proof of (49) and (50) in [43, Theorem 3.2.17] shows that if we do the same analysis for the magnetic Jacobi (or Riccati) equation we obtain numbers A(s) and a(s) for which (49) and (50) hold. These numbers will be as close as we wish to A(0) = 2 and  $a(0) = \sqrt{-\max K} > 1$  if s is small enough and the 1/2-pinching condition follows.

We now make some remarks concerning the space of leaves of the weak foliations. The weak unstable foliation  $W^u$  of  $(\Sigma_k, \omega_\sigma)$  is transverse to the fibres of the fibration by (n-1)-spheres given by

$$\tau \colon \Sigma_k \to M$$
.

(This simply follows from the fact that this property is true for the geodesic flow.) Let  $\widetilde{M}$  denote the universal cover of M and let  $\widetilde{\Sigma}_k$  denote the preimage of  $\Sigma_k$  in  $T^*\widetilde{M}$ . We also have a fibration by (n-1)-spheres

$$\widetilde{\tau}|_{\widetilde{\Sigma}_k} : \widetilde{\Sigma}_k \to \widetilde{M}.$$

Let  $\widetilde{\mathcal{W}}^u$  be the lifted foliation and note that the foliation  $\widetilde{\mathcal{W}}^u$  is also transverse to the fibration  $\widetilde{\tau}|_{\widetilde{\Sigma}_k} \colon \widetilde{\Sigma}_k \to \widetilde{M}$ . Since the fibres are compact a standard result in foliations [11, p.91] implies that for every  $p \in \widetilde{\Sigma}_k$  the map

$$\widetilde{\tau}|_{\widetilde{\mathcal{W}}^u(p)} \colon \widetilde{\mathcal{W}}^u(p) \to \widetilde{M},$$

is a covering map. Since  $\widetilde{M}$  is simply connected,  $\widetilde{\tau}|_{\widetilde{W}^u(p)}$  is in fact a diffeomorphism and  $\widetilde{W}^u(p)$  is simply connected. Consequently,  $\widetilde{W}^u(p)$  intersects each fibre of the fibration  $\widetilde{\tau}|_{\widetilde{\Sigma}_k} : \widetilde{\Sigma}_k \to \widetilde{M}$  at just one point and therefore the space of leaves  $B^u := \widetilde{\Sigma}_k/\widetilde{W}^u$  of the weak unstable foliation can be identified topologically with the (n-1)-sphere. Similarly the space of leaves of the weak stable foliation is also an (n-1)-sphere. Note that  $\pi_1(M)$  acts on  $B^u$ . Since the characteristic foliation of  $(\Sigma_k, \omega_\sigma)$  is topologically conjugate to that of the geodesic flow, the action of  $\pi_1(M)$  on the space of leaves is topologically like in the geodesic flow case: Every element in  $\pi_1(M)$  acts on  $B^u$  as a North-South dynamics, i.e. a homeomorphism of  $S^{n-1}$  with exactly two fixed points  $P_\pm$  such that every other point converges to  $P_\pm$  under forward resp. backward iteration.

Now suppose that  $\Sigma_k$  is stable. Our previous discussion produces a foliation  $\mathcal{F}$  of class  $C^1$  on  $\Sigma_k$ . This foliation can be lifted to  $\widetilde{\Sigma}_k$  and then projected to  $B^u$  ( $\mathcal{F}$  is invariant under holonomy maps) to produce a  $C^1$  foliation of positive dimension on  $B^u$  which is  $\pi_1(M)$ -invariant. By the result in [27], such a foliation must be trivial, i.e. consist of just one leaf. This implies that  $H = E^s$ , and hence

$$d\lambda = \rho\omega_{\sigma}$$

for some constant  $\rho$ . By Corollary 2.10, the constant  $\rho$  cannot be zero. It follows then that  $\omega_{\sigma}$  must be exact on  $\Sigma_k$ . However, the Gysin sequence of the sphere bundle shows that this is impossible since  $[\sigma] \neq 0$  and  $n \neq 2$ .

Thus  $\Sigma_k$  cannot be stable for high energies, which proves Theorem 5.6.

Remark. The proof above can be considerably improved following the ideas in [34] to show the following result: suppose  $[\sigma] \neq 0$  and  $n \geq 3$  (not necessarily even). If  $(\Sigma_k, \omega_\sigma)$  is a 1/2-pinched Anosov Hamiltonian structure, then it cannot

be stable [56]. If we drop the 1/2-pinching condition, the result is no longer true since compact quotients of complex hyperbolic space with the Kähler form are stable for high energies (cf. Subsection 5.2) It is tempting to conjecture that these are the only stable Anosov Hamiltonian structures with  $[\sigma] \neq 0$  and  $n \geq 3$ .

# 6 Homogeneous examples

In this section we study magnetic flows for left-invariant metrics on some compact homogeneous spaces  $\Gamma \setminus G$  and verify the paradigms in the introduction. Here G is always a Lie group and  $\Gamma \subset G$  a cocompact lattice, i.e. a discrete subgroup such that the left quotient  $\Gamma \setminus G$  is compact. The magnetic field  $\sigma$  will be always a left-invariant 2-form.

Using left translations we identify  $T^*G$  with  $G \times \mathfrak{g}^*$  so left-invariant smooth functions  $f \colon T^*G \to \mathbb{R}$  are just elements in  $C^{\infty}(\mathfrak{g}^*)$ . As before we set  $\omega_{\sigma} = dp \wedge dq + \tau^*\sigma$ , where  $dp \wedge dq$  is the canonical symplectic form in  $T^*G$ . Let  $\{\ ,\ \}_{\sigma}$  be the Poisson bracket of  $\omega_{\sigma}$  defined as  $\{H,F\}_{\sigma} = \omega_{\sigma}(X_H,X_F)$ . Since all the objects involved are left-invariant, in the next lemma we just focus on the identity  $e \in G$ .

**Lemma 6.1.** Let  $\mu \in \mathfrak{g}^*$ ,  $(v,\xi)$ ,  $(w,\eta) \in T_{(e,\mu)}(G \times \mathfrak{g}^*) = \mathfrak{g} \times \mathfrak{g}^*$ . We have:

- (i)  $\omega_{\sigma}(e,\mu)((v,\xi),(w,\eta)) = \xi(w) \eta(v) \mu([v,w]) + \sigma_{e}(v,w);$
- (ii) Given  $f, g \in C^{\infty}(\mathfrak{g}^*)$ ,

$$\{f,g\}_{\sigma}(\mu) = \mu([d_{\mu}f,d_{\mu}g]) - \sigma_e(d_{\mu}f,d_{\mu}g)$$

where we canonically identify  $(\mathfrak{g}^*)^*$  with  $\mathfrak{g}$ ;

(iii) Given  $f \in C^{\infty}(\mathfrak{g}^*)$ , let  $X_f$  be the Hamiltonian vector field of f with respect to  $\omega_{\sigma}$ . Then

$$X_f(e,\mu) = (d_{\mu}f, E_f(\mu)),$$

where  $E_f(\mu) \in \mathfrak{g}^*$  is given by

$$E_f(\mu)(w) = \mu([d_{\mu}f, w]) - \sigma_e(d_{\mu}f, w).$$

We will call  $E_f$  the Euler vector field of f.

*Proof.* The proof of the lemma for  $\sigma = 0$  can be found in [2, Section 4.4]. When  $\sigma \neq 0$  the lemma follows right away from the definition of  $\omega_{\sigma}$ ; we leave the details to the reader.

Suppose  $f \in C^{\infty}(\mathfrak{g}^*)$  has a compact level set  $\mathbf{S}_k := f^{-1}(k) \subset \mathfrak{g}^*$ . Clearly  $E_f$  is tangent to  $\mathbf{S}_k$ ; let  $\psi_t$  be its flow. Let  $\phi_t$  be the flow of  $X_f$  in  $\Sigma_k = (\Gamma \setminus G) \times \mathbf{S}_k$ . Let  $\pi_2 \colon (\Gamma \setminus G) \times \mathbf{S}_k \to \mathbf{S}_k$  be the second factor projection. Clearly  $\pi_2 \circ \phi_t = \psi_t \circ \pi_2$ . Thus, if  $E_f$  is geodesible on  $\mathbf{S}_k$ , then  $\Sigma_k$  is a stable hypersurface. This observation is nothing but a rephrasing of Lemma 2.3 in this context.

### 6.1 Tori

Consider the torus  $\mathbb{T}^n$   $(n \geq 2)$  and let  $\sigma$  be a non-zero constant 2-form. Let  $\omega_{\sigma} = dp \wedge dq + \tau^* \sigma$  be the twisted symplectic form on  $T^* \mathbb{T}^n$ . We shall consider on  $\mathbb{T}^n$  the usual flat metric and we let  $\Sigma_k := H^{-1}(k)$ , where  $H(q,p) = \frac{1}{2}|p|^2$ . Below we will make use of the following elementary lemma.

**Lemma 6.2.** Consider  $\mathbb{R}^k$  with its usual inner product and let  $A \colon \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^k$  be an antisymmetric linear map. Consider the 1-form  $\alpha$  in  $\mathbb{R}^k$  given by  $\alpha_p(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \langle p, A\xi \rangle$ . Then

$$d\alpha_p(\xi_1, \xi_2) = \langle \xi_1, A\xi_2 \rangle.$$

**Proposition 6.3.** If  $\sigma$  is non-zero, then the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is stable, tame and displaceable for any k > 0.

*Proof.* Write  $T^*\mathbb{T}^n = \mathbb{T}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $\pi \colon \mathbb{T}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  be the second factor projection. The equations of motion of any Hamiltonian H(q,p) with respect to  $\omega_{\sigma}$  are given by

$$\begin{split} \dot{q} &= \nabla_p H, \\ \dot{p} &= J \nabla_p H - \nabla_q H, \end{split}$$

where  $J \colon \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  is the antisymmetric linear map determined by  $\sigma(\cdot, \cdot) = \langle \cdot, J \cdot \rangle$ . In particular, for the Hamiltonian  $H(q, p) = \frac{1}{2} |p|^2$  we obtain

$$\dot{q} = p,$$
 $\dot{p} = Jp$ 

Split  $\mathbb{R}^n$  orthogonally as  $\mathbb{R}^n = \operatorname{Ker} J \oplus \operatorname{Im} J$  and let  $P_1 \colon \mathbb{R}^n \to \operatorname{Ker} J$  and  $P_2 \colon \mathbb{R}^n \to \operatorname{Im} J$  be the corresponding orthogonal projections. The restriction of J to  $\operatorname{Im} J$  is invertible and we let  $A := (J|_{\operatorname{Im} J})^{-1}$ . With this choice of A we obtain a 1-form  $\alpha$  on  $\operatorname{Im} J$  as in Lemma 6.2.

Let  $f: \mathbb{T}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{T}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$  be the map  $f(q,p) = (q,P_1(p))$  and let  $\nu$  be the Liouville 1-form in  $T^*\mathbb{T}^n$ . We claim that

$$\lambda := f^*\nu + (P_2 \circ \pi)^*\alpha$$

is a stabilizing 1-form on  $\Sigma_k$  for any k > 0. Note that  $df_{(q,p)}(X_H) = (p,0)$  and  $d\pi_{(q,p)}(X_H) = Jp$ . Thus

$$\lambda_{(q,p)}(X_H) = \nu_{(q,P_1(p))}(p,0) + \alpha_{P_2(p)}(Jp) = |P_1(p)|^2 + \frac{1}{2}|P_2(p)|^2$$

which is always positive on  $\Sigma_k$ . On the other hand using Lemma 6.2 we obtain

$$i_{X_H} d\lambda_{(q,p)}(x,y) = d\nu_{(q,P_1(p))}((p,0),(x,P_1(y))) + \langle Jp,AP_2(y)\rangle,$$

where (x, y) denotes a vector in  $T_{(q,p)}(\mathbb{T}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n)$ . Using the fact that  $d\nu$  is the standard symplectic form on  $T^*\mathbb{T}^n$  we obtain

$$d\nu_{(q,P_1(p))}((p,0),(x,P_1(y))) = -dH_{(q,P_1(p))}(x,P_1(y)) = -\langle p,P_1(y)\rangle.$$

Using the definition of A the other term is

$$\langle Jp, AP_2(y) \rangle = -\langle p, JAP_2(y) \rangle = -\langle p, P_2(y) \rangle$$

and hence

$$i_{X_H} d\lambda_{(q,p)}(x,y) = -\langle p, y \rangle = 0$$

for  $(x,y) \in T_{(q,p)}\Sigma_k$ . This proves  $(i_{X_H}d\lambda)|_{\Sigma_k} = 0$ , so  $\lambda$  is a stabilizing 1-form for  $\Sigma_k$ .

Displaceability of  $\Sigma_k$  is easy to see (cf. [10, Theorem B] and the proof of Theorem 3.1 in [31]): Pick any  $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$  with  $Ja \neq 0$  (this exists since  $\sigma \neq 0$ ) and consider the Hamiltonian  $h(q, p) = \langle a, p \rangle$ . The corresponding Hamiltonian flow defined by

$$\dot{q} = a, \qquad \dot{p} = Ja$$

contains a translation in direction Ja and hence displaces every compact subset of  $T^*\mathbb{T}^n$ .

In order to show that  $\Sigma_k$  is tame we need to locate the contractible closed orbits. We can readily find the flow  $\phi_t$  of  $X_H$ . Since J is antisymmetric, the solution to  $\dot{p} = Jp$  is a 1-parameter subgroup  $t \mapsto e^{tJ} \in SO(n)$ . We have

$$\phi_t(q,p) = \left(\int_0^t e^{sJ} p \, ds + q, \ e^{tJ} p\right). \tag{51}$$

Write  $p = p_1 + p_2$ , where  $p_1 \in \text{Ker } J$  and  $p_2 \in \text{Im } J$ . Then  $e^{sJ}p = p_1 + e^{sJ}p_2$  and thus

$$\int_0^t e^{sJ} p \, ds = p_1 t + \int_0^t e^{sJ} p_2 \, ds. \tag{52}$$

Let  $\hat{J} := J|_{\text{Im}J}$ . Then  $e^{s\hat{J}} = e^{sJ}|_{\text{Im}J}$ . But  $\hat{J}$  is invertible, so we may write

$$\int_0^t e^{sJ} p_2 \, ds = \int_0^t (\hat{J})^{-1} \frac{d}{ds} \left( e^{s\hat{J}} p_2 \right) \, ds = (\hat{J})^{-1} (e^{t\hat{J}} - I) p_2.$$

Combining this with (51) and (52) we see that  $(q, p) \in \Sigma_k$  gives rise to a closed contractible orbit of period T iff  $p_1 = 0$ ,  $e^{TJ}p_2 = p_2$  and  $|p_2|^2 = 2k$ .

Now, a primitive for  $dp \wedge dq + \tau^* \sigma$  in  $T^* \mathbb{R}^n$  is given by  $pdq + \tau^* \beta$  where  $\beta_q(a) = \frac{1}{2} \langle q, Ja \rangle$  (we use again Lemma 6.2). Thus, if v is a closed contractible orbit in  $\Sigma_k$ , we have

$$\Omega(v) = \int_{v} (pdq + \tau^*\beta) = 2kT + \int_{\tau(v)} \beta.$$

We compute

$$\int_{T(t)} \beta = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \langle (\hat{J})^{-1} (e^{t\hat{J}} - I) p_2, J e^{t\hat{J}} p_2 \rangle dt = -\frac{1}{2} |p_2|^2 T = -kT,$$

and therefore

$$\Omega(v) = kT$$

which clearly shows that  $\Sigma_k$  is tame.

*Remark.* It is instructive to see what the form  $\lambda$  looks like in the following special cases:

• when n=2 and  $\sigma=dq_1 \wedge dq_2$ , then

$$\lambda = -\frac{1}{2}(p_1 dp_2 - p_2 dp_1),$$

• when n=3 and  $\sigma=dq_1 \wedge dq_2$ , then

$$\lambda = p_3 dq_3 - \frac{1}{2} (p_1 dp_2 - p_2 dp_1).$$

Note that the Mañé critical value is infinite because a non-zero  $\sigma$  has no bounded primitives in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

### 6.2 The Heisenberg group

Let G be the 3-dimensional Heisenberg group of matrices

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} 1 & x & z \\ 0 & 1 & y \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right),\,$$

where  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}$ . If we identify G with  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , then the product is

$$(x, y, z) \star (x', y', z') = (x + x', y + y', z + z' + xy').$$

For  $\Gamma$  we take the lattice of those matrices with  $x,y,z\in\mathbb{Z}$ . However, the following discussion will hold for any cocompact lattice  $\Gamma$ . In fact, all lattices are isomorphic to the semidirect product  $\mathbb{Z}^2\ltimes_A\mathbb{Z}$  where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{cc} 1 & k \\ 0 & 1 \end{array}\right),$$

for some positive integer k [66].

The 1-forms  $\alpha:=dx,\ \beta:=dy$  and  $\gamma:=dz-xdy$  are left-invariant and provide a trivialization of  $T^*G$  as  $G\times \mathfrak{g}^*$ . We let  $(x,y,z,p_\alpha,p_\beta,p_\gamma)$  be the coordinates induced by this trivialization. Note that  $(p_\alpha,p_\beta,p_\gamma)$  descend to coordinates

on  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus G) = (\Gamma \setminus G) \times \mathfrak{g}^*$ . The coordinates  $(p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}, p_{\gamma})$  are related to the coordinates  $(p_x, p_y, p_z)$  by  $p_{\alpha} = p_x$ ,  $p_{\beta} = p_y + xp_z$  and  $p_{\gamma} = p_z$ .

We consider the following left-invariant Hamiltonian H (dual to a suitable left-invariant metric on G):

$$2H = p_{\alpha}^{2} + p_{\beta}^{2} + p_{\gamma}^{2} = p_{x}^{2} + (p_{y} + xp_{z})^{2} + p_{z}^{2}.$$

The magnetic field is given by the left-invariant 2-form

$$\sigma := -dx \wedge dy$$
.

Note that  $\sigma$  descends to an exact 2-form on  $\Gamma \setminus G$  since  $\sigma = d\gamma$ . Also observe that  $2H(\gamma) \equiv 1$ , which implies that Mañé's critical value  $c_0$  is  $\leq 1/2$ . Later on we will see that  $c = c_0 = 1/2$ .

The twisted symplectic form  $\omega$  is:

$$\omega = dp_x \wedge dx + dp_y \wedge dy + dp_z \wedge dz - dx \wedge dy$$
  
=  $dp_\alpha \wedge dx + dp_\beta \wedge dy + dp_\gamma \wedge dz - x dp_\gamma \wedge dy - (1 + p_\gamma)dx \wedge dy$ .

The Hamiltonian vector field of a function H with respect to  $\omega$  is given by (where  $H_x$  etc. denote partial derivatives)

$$X_{H} = \begin{cases} \dot{x} = H_{p_{\alpha}}, & \dot{p}_{\alpha} = -H_{x} - (1 + p_{\gamma})H_{p_{\beta}}, \\ \dot{y} = H_{p_{\beta}}, & \dot{p}_{\beta} = -H_{y} + xH_{z} + (1 + p_{\gamma})H_{p_{\alpha}}, \\ \dot{z} = xH_{p_{\beta}} + H_{p_{\gamma}}, & \dot{p}_{\gamma} = -H_{z}. \end{cases}$$
(53)

In particular, for the left-invariant Hamiltonian above we obtain

$$X_{H} = \begin{cases} \dot{x} = p_{\alpha}, & \dot{p}_{\alpha} = -p_{\beta}p_{\gamma} - p_{\beta}, \\ \dot{y} = p_{\beta}, & \dot{p}_{\beta} = p_{\alpha}p_{\gamma} + p_{\alpha}, \\ \dot{z} = xp_{\beta} + p_{\gamma}, & \dot{p}_{\gamma} = 0. \end{cases}$$
(54)

The non-zero Poisson brackets of the coordinate functions are  $(X_f(\bullet) = \{f, \bullet\})$ 

$$\{p_{\alpha}, x\} = \{p_{\beta}, y\} = \{p_{\gamma}, z\} = 1, \ \{p_{\beta}, z\} = x, \ \{p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}\} = 1 + p_{\gamma}.$$

Let the Liouville 1-form be  $\nu = p_x dx + p_y dy + p_z dz$  and let

$$\psi := \nu + \tau^* \gamma.$$

Clearly  $d\psi = \omega$ . We compute

$$\psi(X_H) = p_{\alpha}^2 + p_{\beta}(p_{\beta} - xp_{\gamma}) + p_{\gamma}(xp_{\beta} + p_{\gamma}) + p_{\gamma}$$
  
=  $p_{\alpha}^2 + p_{\beta}^2 + p_{\gamma}(p_{\gamma} + 1) = 2H + p_{\gamma}.$  (55)

Let  $\Sigma_k := H^{-1}(k)$ .

**Lemma 6.4.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type if and only if k > 1/2.

*Proof.* Equation (55) tells us right away that if k > 1/2, then  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type with contact form  $\psi$  since in this case

$$\psi(X_H) = 2k + p_{\gamma} \ge 2k - \sqrt{2k} > 0$$

for every point in  $\Sigma_k$ .

An inspection of (54) reveals that  $p_{\alpha} = p_{\beta} = y = 0$ ,  $p_{\gamma} = -\sqrt{2k}$ ,  $x = x_0$ ,  $z(t) = z_0 - \sqrt{2k}t$  give orbits of  $X_H$  with energy k which project to closed orbits in  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus G)$ . These closed orbits are in fact null-homologous since  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  integrate to zero along them and these two 1-forms span  $H^1(\Gamma \setminus G, \mathbb{R})$ . (This is because by a theorem of K. Nomizu [57] the de Rham cohomology ring of  $\Gamma \setminus G$  is isomorphic to the Lie algebra cohomology of  $\mathfrak{g}$  and the isomorphism is induced by the natural inclusion of left-invariant forms.) Let  $\delta$  be one of these closed orbits. Using (55) we see that for  $k \leq 1/2$ 

$$\int_{\delta} \psi = (2k - \sqrt{2k})\tau \le 0,\tag{56}$$

where  $\tau$  is the period of  $\delta$ . Now let  $\mu$  be the Liouville measure on  $\Sigma_k$ . Again, using (55) we obtain

$$\int_{\Sigma_k} \psi(X_H) \, d\mu = \int_{\Sigma_k} (2k + p_\gamma) \, d\mu = 2k > 0.$$
 (57)

By Lemma 2.9 the Liouville measure is exact as a current, so (56), (57) and Corollary 2.8 ensure that  $\Sigma_k$  cannot be of contact type. Alternatively, instead of the Liouville measure one may also take the distinguished null-homologous closed orbits with  $p_{\alpha} = p_{\beta} = y = 0$ ,  $p_{\gamma} = \sqrt{2k}$ ,  $x = x_0$  and  $z(t) = z_0 + \sqrt{2k}t$ . The integral of  $\psi$  along them has value  $(2k + \sqrt{2k})\tau > 0$ .

**Lemma 6.5.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is stable for k < 1/2.

*Proof.* Consider the following form on  $\Sigma_k$ 

$$\varphi := \frac{p_{\alpha}dp_{\beta} - p_{\beta}dp_{\alpha}}{p_{\alpha}^2 + p_{\beta}^2}.$$

This form is smooth away from  $p_{\gamma} = \pm \sqrt{2k}$  and  $d\varphi = 0$ . We look for stabilizing 1-forms  $\lambda$  of the form

$$\lambda = f(p_{\gamma})\psi + g(p_{\gamma})\varphi,$$

where f and g are smooth functions in  $[-\sqrt{2k}, \sqrt{2k}]$  and g vanishes in small neighbourhoods of the end points. Using  $\psi(X_H) = 2k + p_{\gamma}$  and  $\varphi(X_H) = 1 + p_{\gamma}$ , the condition  $\lambda(X_H) > 0$  is equivalent to

$$(2k + p_{\gamma})f(p_{\gamma}) + (1 + p_{\gamma})g(p_{\gamma}) > 0, \tag{58}$$

and the condition  $i_{X_H} d\lambda = 0$  is equivalent to

$$(2k + p_{\gamma})f'(p_{\gamma}) + (1 + p_{\gamma})g'(p_{\gamma}) = 0.$$
(59)

To see that we can always choose f and g satisfying (58) and (59) provided that 2k < 1, take a non-negative smooth function  $r(p_{\gamma})$  which vanishes near the end points of  $[-\sqrt{2k}, \sqrt{2k}], r(-2k) > 0$  (note that  $-\sqrt{2k} < -2k$ ) and

$$\int_{-\sqrt{2k}}^{\sqrt{2k}} \frac{2k + p_{\gamma}}{1 + p_{\gamma}} r(p_{\gamma}) dp_{\gamma} = 0.$$

Note that this is always possible. Indeed as r we could take  $(1+p_{\gamma})q(2k+p_{\gamma})$  where q(t) is a smooth non-negative even bump function with small support containing the origin. Now let

$$f(p_{\gamma}) := \int_{-2k}^{p_{\gamma}} r(t) dt$$

and

$$g(p_{\gamma}) := -\int_{-\sqrt{2k}}^{p_{\gamma}} \frac{2k+t}{1+t} r(t) dt.$$

Clearly (59) holds. With these choices, f vanishes only at -2k, is negative at the left of -2k and positive at the right of -2k. Also  $g \ge 0$ , it vanishes near the end points and g(-2k) > 0, thus (58) also holds.

**Lemma 6.6.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is displaceable for k < 1/2.

*Proof.* Consider the Hamiltonian in  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus G)$  given by  $f = p_{\alpha}$ . Clearly  $p_{\gamma}$  does not change along the Hamiltonian flow of f and  $p_{\beta}$  changes according to

$$\dot{p_{\beta}} = \{p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}\} = 1 + p_{\gamma}.$$

Thus if k < 1/2 and we flow a point in  $\Sigma_k$  along the Hamiltonian flow of f, we have  $p_{\beta} \ge 1 - \sqrt{2k} > 0$ . Thus the flow of f will displace  $\Sigma_k$  as desired.

**Lemma 6.7.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  has closed contractible orbits if and only if k < 1/2. If k < 1/2 and  $v \in X(\Sigma_k)$  then  $\Omega(v)$  is a positive integer multiple of  $2\pi(1-\sqrt{1-2k}) > 0$  and  $\Sigma_k$  is tame.

Proof. The equations in (54) show that  $p_{\gamma}$  is a first integral (in fact it is the Casimir of  $\mathfrak{g}^*$ ) and that if  $p_{\gamma}+1\neq 0$ , then  $p_{\alpha}$  and  $p_{\beta}$  are trigonometric functions with period  $T=2\pi/(1+p_{\gamma})$  and  $p_{\alpha}^2+p_{\beta}^2=2k-p_{\gamma}^2$ . Since  $p_{\alpha}$  and  $p_{\beta}$  have zero integral along the period, x and y are also T-periodic functions. Hence we get a closed contractible orbit iff z is periodic of period T (or an integer multiple). To analyze this condition, abbreviate  $\mu:=1+p_{\gamma}\neq 0$  and  $a:=\sqrt{2k-p_{\gamma}^2}\geq 0$ . After time shift, the solutions of Hamilton's equations (54) are given by

$$p_{\alpha}(t) = a \cos \mu t,$$
  $p_{\beta}(t) = a \sin \mu t,$   $p_{\gamma} = \text{const},$   $x(t) = x_0 + \frac{a \sin \mu t}{\mu}.$ 

Again looking at (54), we see that periodicity of z is equivalent to

$$\int_0^{2\pi/(1+p_{\gamma})} (x(t)p_{\beta}(t) + p_{\gamma}) dt = 0.$$

Evaluating the integral, we obtain the condition

$$2p_{\gamma} + \frac{2k - p_{\gamma}^{2}}{1 + p_{\gamma}} = 0. \tag{60}$$

If k < 1/2, then  $1 + p_{\gamma} > 0$  and there is a unique solution to (60) given by  $p_{\gamma} = \sqrt{1 - 2k} - 1 \in (-\sqrt{2k}, 0)$ , so we have contractible closed orbits.

If  $k \geq 1/2$  it is easy to see that there are no such solutions. Indeed, this is clear if  $1 + p_{\gamma} \neq 0$  because equation (60) has no real solutions for k > 1/2 and only the solution  $p_{\gamma} = -1$  for k = 1/2. It remains to analyse the case  $p_{\gamma} = -1$ . It gives rise to a circle  $p_{\alpha}^{\ 2} + p_{\beta}^{\ 2} = 2k - 1$  of critical points for the Euler vector field (which degenerates to a point when k = 1/2). Thus along solutions  $p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}, p_{\gamma}$  are constant, and from (54) we see that

$$x(t) = x_0 + p_{\alpha}t,$$
  $y(t) = y_0 + p_{\beta}t$ 

are periodic iff  $p_{\alpha} = p_{\beta} = 0$  (so in particular k = 1/2). But then  $z(t) = z_0 + p_{\gamma}t$  is not periodic since  $p_{\gamma} \neq 0$ , so there are no contractible closed orbits for  $k \geq 1/2$ .

Since  $d\psi = \omega$ , to compute  $\Omega(v)$  we just need to integrate  $\psi$  along one of the closed orbits of  $X_H$  described above. Since  $\psi(X_H) = 2k + p_{\gamma}$  we deduce

$$\Omega(v) = T(2k + p_{\gamma}) = 2\pi(1 - \sqrt{1 - 2k}) > 0.$$

This also shows that  $\Sigma_k$  is tame.

Remark. It is not hard to show that for k < 1/2, the closed contractible orbits form a Morse-Bott 4-dimensional submanifold of  $\Sigma_k$  diffeomorphic to  $(\Gamma \setminus G) \times S^1$ .

**Lemma 6.8.** The Mañé critical values equal  $c = c_0 = 1/2$ .

*Proof.* As noted above,  $2H(\gamma) \equiv 1$  implies  $c_0 \leq 1/2$ . On the other hand, Lemma 6.4 and Lemma 5.3 imply  $c_0 \geq 1/2$ , hence  $c_0 = 1/2$ . Since  $\Gamma$  is nilpotent, it is amenable and  $c = c_0$  by property (iv) in Section 5.3.

**Lemma 6.9.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  is not stable.

*Proof.* By Lemma 6.7,  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  has no closed contractible orbits. By Lemma 6.6,  $\Sigma_k$  is displaceable for any k < 1/2, hence Theorem 1.5 implies that  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  is not stable.

## **6.3** $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$

The magnetic flow discussed here also appears in [9]. It will be convenient for us to identify  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  with  $S\mathbb{H}^2$ , the unit sphere bundle of the upper half plane with its usual metric of curvature -1

$$\frac{dx^2 + dy^2}{y^2}.$$

We recall that the standard identification  $\phi \colon S\mathbb{H}^2 \to PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  is given as follows:  $\phi(x,y,v)$  is the unique Möbius transformation T (with real coefficients) such that T(i) = x + iy and whose derivative at i takes the tangent vector (0,1) at i to the tangent vector v at (x,y). In  $S\mathbb{H}^2$  we consider coordinates  $(x,y,\theta)$  and the following vector fields

$$X = y \cos \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + y \sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial y} - \cos \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta},$$

$$Y = -y \sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + y \cos \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + \sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta},$$

$$V = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}.$$

It is easy to check that these vector fields satisfy the bracket relations:

$$[X, Y] = -V, \quad [V, X] = Y, \quad [V, Y] = -X,$$

so they form the basis of a Lie algebra isomorphic to  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$ . In fact under the map  $\phi$  the vector fields X, Y and V correspond to the left invariant vector fields on  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  whose values at the Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  are:

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/2 \end{pmatrix}, Y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1/2 \\ -1/2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, V = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1/2 \\ -1/2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The dual coframe of left-invariant 1-forms  $\{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$  is given by

$$\alpha = \frac{\cos \theta \, dx + \sin \theta \, dy}{y},$$

$$\beta = \frac{-\sin \theta \, dx + \cos \theta \, dy}{y},$$

$$\gamma = \frac{dx}{y} + d\theta.$$

Using this coframe we identify  $T^*S\mathbb{H}^2$  with  $S\mathbb{H}^2 \times \mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})^*$  and we obtain coordinates  $(x, y, \theta, p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}, p_{\gamma})$ . The left-invariant coordinates  $(p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}, p_{\gamma})$  are related to  $(p_x, p_y, p_{\theta})$  by the formulas

$$p_{\alpha} = (yp_x - p_{\theta})\cos\theta + yp_y\sin\theta,$$
  

$$p_{\beta} = -(yp_x - p_{\theta})\sin\theta + yp_y\cos\theta,$$
  

$$p_{\gamma} = p_{\theta}.$$

We will endow  $S\mathbb{H}^2$  with its Sasaki metric. In this case this means the unique metric that makes the basis  $\{X,Y,V\}$  an orthonormal frame at every point. Explicitly

$$ds^{2} = \frac{1}{y^{2}} \left[ \dot{x}^{2} + \dot{y}^{2} + (\dot{\theta}y + \dot{x})^{2} \right].$$

The Hamiltonian is

$$2H = (yp_x - p_\theta)^2 + (yp_y)^2 + p_\theta^2 = p_\alpha^2 + p_\beta^2 + p_\gamma^2.$$

The magnetic field is given by the left-invariant exact 2-form

$$\sigma := d\gamma = \frac{dx \wedge dy}{y^2}.$$

The Hamiltonian vector field of H with respect to the twisted symplectic form  $\omega$  is given by

$$X_{H} = \begin{cases} \dot{x} = y(yp_{x} - p_{\theta}), & \dot{p}_{x} = p_{y}, \\ \dot{y} = y^{2}p_{y}, & \dot{p}_{y} = (-yp_{x} + p_{\theta})(p_{x} + 1/y) - yp_{y}^{2}, \\ \dot{\theta} = 2p_{\theta} - yp_{x}, & \dot{p}_{\theta} = 0. \end{cases}$$

$$(61)$$

In terms of the left-invariant coordinates we get

$$X_{H} = \begin{cases} \dot{x} = y(p_{\alpha}\cos\theta - p_{\beta}\sin\theta), & \dot{p}_{\alpha} = 2p_{\beta}p_{\gamma} + p_{\beta}, \\ \dot{y} = y(p_{\alpha}\sin\theta + p_{\beta}\cos\theta), & \dot{p}_{\beta} = -2p_{\alpha}p_{\gamma} - p_{\alpha}, \\ \dot{\theta} = p_{\gamma} - p_{\alpha}\cos\theta + p_{\beta}\sin\theta, & \dot{p}_{\gamma} = 0. \end{cases}$$
(62)

The Poisson brackets of the left-invariant coordinate functions are

$$\{p_{\alpha}, p_{\beta}\} = -p_{\gamma} - 1, \quad \{p_{\alpha}, p_{\gamma}\} = -p_{\beta}, \quad \{p_{\beta}, p_{\gamma}\} = p_{\alpha}.$$

Let the Liouville 1-form be  $\nu = p_x dx + p_y dy + p_\theta d\theta$  and let

$$\psi := \nu + \tau^* \gamma.$$

Clearly  $d\psi = \omega$ . We compute

$$\psi(X_H) = p_x y (y p_x - p_\theta) + y^2 p_y^2 + (2p_\theta - y p_x)(p_\theta + 1) + (y p_x - p_\theta)$$
  
=  $2H + p_\theta = 2H + p_\gamma$ . (63)

Let  $\Gamma \subset PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  be a discrete cocompact lattice which acts without fixed points on  $\mathbb{H}^2$ . We denote the quantities on the quotient  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R}))$  by the same letters  $H, \ldots$ . Let  $\Sigma_k := H^{-1}(k)$  (k > 0).

**Lemma 6.10.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type if and only if k > 1/2.

*Proof.* Equation (63) tells us right away that if k > 1/2, then  $\Sigma_k$  is of contact type with contact form  $\psi$  since in this case

$$\psi(X_H) = 2k + p_{\gamma} \ge 2k - \sqrt{2k} > 0$$

for every point in  $\Sigma_k$ . An inspection of (62) reveals that  $p_{\alpha} = p_{\beta} = 0$ ,  $p_{\gamma} = -\sqrt{2k}$ ,  $x = x_0$ ,  $y = y_0$ ,  $\theta(t) = \theta_0 - \sqrt{2k}t$  give orbits of  $X_H$  with energy k which project to closed orbits in  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus G)$ . These closed orbits are in fact null-homologous. To see this note that  $\Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  can be identified with the unit circle bundle of the closed Riemann surface  $\Gamma \setminus \mathbb{H}^2$ . The closed orbits of  $X_H$  under consideration, when projected to  $\Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ , are precisely the unit circles in  $S(\Gamma \setminus \mathbb{H}^2)$ . But these circles are null-homologous. Indeed, it is well known (and it follows from the Gysin sequence of the circle bundle), that the foot-point projection map  $S(\Gamma \setminus \mathbb{H}^2) \mapsto \Gamma \setminus \mathbb{H}^2$  induces an isomorphism  $H^1(\Gamma \setminus \mathbb{H}^2,\mathbb{R}) \cong H^1(S(\Gamma \setminus \mathbb{H}^2),\mathbb{R})$ .

Let  $\delta$  be one of these distinguished null-homologous closed orbits of  $X_H$  and let  $\tau$  be its period. Using (63) we see that for  $k \leq 1/2$ 

$$\int_{\delta} \psi = (2k - \sqrt{2k})\tau \le 0. \tag{64}$$

Now let  $\mu$  be the Liouville measure on  $\Sigma_k$ . Again, using (63) we obtain

$$\int_{\Sigma_k} \psi(X_H) \, d\mu = \int_{\Sigma_k} (2k + p_\gamma) \, d\mu = 2k > 0.$$
 (65)

By Lemma 2.9 the Liouville measure is exact as a current, so (64), (65) and Corollary 2.8 ensure that  $\Sigma_k$  cannot be of contact type. Alternatively, instead of the Liouville measure one may also take the distinguished null-homologous closed orbits with  $p_{\alpha}=p_{\beta}=0, \, p_{\gamma}=\sqrt{2k}, \, x=x_0, \, y=y_0$  and  $\theta(t)=\theta_0+\sqrt{2k}t$ . The integral of  $\psi$  along them has value  $(2k+\sqrt{2k})\tau>0$ .

We now prove that in this example we have a gap between c and  $c_0$  of size 1/4.

**Lemma 6.11.** The strict Mañé critical value equals  $c_0 = 1/2$ , but the Mañé critical value equals c = 1/4.

*Proof.* Note that  $2H(\gamma) = 1$  and thus  $c_0 \le 1/2$ . If  $c_0 < 1/2$ , then by Lemma 5.3 we would have energy levels  $\Sigma_k$  with k < 1/2 which are of contact type, which is impossible by Lemma 6.10. Thus  $c_0 = 1/2$ .

Now consider the 1-form

$$\delta := \frac{dx}{u} + \frac{d\theta}{2}.$$

Clearly  $d\delta = d\gamma$  in  $S\mathbb{H}^2$  and  $2H(\delta) = 1/2$ . (Note that  $\delta$  is *not* left-invariant.) Thus  $c \leq 1/4$ . The fact that c = 1/4 is most easily seen as follows. Consider the Lagrangian L in  $S\mathbb{H}^2$  determined by  $\delta$ , namely

$$L = \frac{1}{2u^2} \left[ \dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2 + (\dot{\theta}y + \dot{x})^2 \right] + \frac{\dot{x}}{u} + \frac{\dot{\theta}}{2}.$$

Let  $C_r$  be the curve in  $\mathbb{H}^2$  given by the boundary of a geodesic disk  $D_r$  of radius r. We parametrize  $C_r$  so that it has hyperbolic speed equal to  $\sqrt{2k}$  and

it is oriented clockwise. Let  $\ell_r = 2\pi \sinh r$  be its hyperbolic length. If we let (x(t), y(t)) be the chosen parametrization for  $C_r$ , let  $B_r$  be the closed curve given by  $[0, \ell_r/\sqrt{2k}] \ni t \mapsto (x(t)/\sqrt{2}, y(t))$ . By taking  $\theta$  constant, we may see  $B_r$  as a closed contractible curve in  $S\mathbb{H}^2$ . We will compute the action  $A_{L+k}(B_r)$  and show that for any k < 1/4, there is r such that  $A_{L+k}(B_r) < 0$ . This implies c = 1/4 (cf. Section 5). Indeed we have

$$A_{L+k}(B_r) = \sqrt{2k}\ell_r + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int_0^{\ell_r/\sqrt{2k}} \frac{\dot{x}}{y} dt$$
$$= \sqrt{2k}\ell_r - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int_{D_r} \frac{dx \wedge dy}{y^2}$$
$$= 2\pi \left(\sqrt{2k} \sinh r - \frac{\cosh r - 1}{\sqrt{2}}\right).$$

The last expression shows that if k < 1/4, then  $A_{L+k}(B_r) \to -\infty$  as  $r \to \infty$ .

**Lemma 6.12.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is stable for k < 1/4 and  $k \in (1/4, 1/2)$ .

*Proof.* Consider the following form on  $\Sigma_k$ 

$$\varphi := \frac{-p_{\alpha}dp_{\beta} + p_{\beta}dp_{\alpha}}{p_{\alpha}^2 + p_{\beta}^2}.$$

This form is smooth away from  $p_{\gamma} = \pm \sqrt{2k}$  and  $d\varphi = 0$ . As in the case of the Heisenberg group, we look for stabilizing 1-forms  $\lambda$  of the form

$$\lambda = f(p_{\gamma})\psi + g(p_{\gamma})\varphi,$$

where f and g are smooth functions in  $[-\sqrt{2k}, \sqrt{2k}]$  and g vanishes in neighbourhoods of the end points. Using  $\psi(X_H) = 2k + p_{\gamma}$  and  $\varphi(X_H) = 1 + 2p_{\gamma}$ , the condition  $\lambda(X_H) > 0$  is equivalent to

$$(2k + p_{\gamma})f(p_{\gamma}) + (1 + 2p_{\gamma})g(p_{\gamma}) > 0, \tag{66}$$

and the condition  $i_{X_H} d\lambda = 0$  is equivalent to

$$(2k + p_{\gamma})f'(p_{\gamma}) + (1 + 2p_{\gamma})g'(p_{\gamma}) = 0.$$
(67)

To see that we can always choose f and g satisfying (66) and (67) provided that k < 1/4 or  $k \in (1/4, 1/2)$  we proceed as in the case of the Heisenberg group, but we will need some minor adjustments.

Case 
$$k < 1/4$$
. Here  $-\sqrt{2k} < -1/2 < -2k$ .

Take a non-negative smooth function  $r(p_{\gamma})$  which vanishes outside a small neighbourhood of -2k which excludes -1/2 such that r(-2k) > 0 and

$$\int_{-\sqrt{2k}}^{\sqrt{2k}} \frac{2k + p_{\gamma}}{1 + 2p_{\gamma}} r(p_{\gamma}) dp_{\gamma} = 0.$$

Note that this is always possible. Indeed as r we could take  $(1+2p_{\gamma})q(2k+p_{\gamma})$  where q(t) is a smooth non-negative even bump function with small support containing the origin. Now let

$$f(p_{\gamma}) := \int_{-2k}^{p_{\gamma}} r(t) dt$$

and

$$g(p_{\gamma}):=-\int_{-\sqrt{2k}}^{p_{\gamma}}\frac{2k+t}{1+2t}r(t)\,dt.$$

Clearly (67) holds. With these choices, f vanishes only at -2k, is negative at the left of -2k and positive at the right of -2k. Also  $g \ge 0$ , it vanishes outside a small neighbourhood of -2k and g(-2k) > 0, thus (66) also holds.

Case  $k \in (1/4, 1/2)$ . Here  $-\sqrt{2k} < -2k < -1/2$ . As in the previous case, take a non-negative smooth function  $r(p_{\gamma})$  which vanishes outside a small neighbourhood of -2k which excludes -1/2 such that r(-2k) > 0 and

$$\int_{-\sqrt{2k}}^{\sqrt{2k}} \frac{2k + p_{\gamma}}{1 + 2p_{\gamma}} r(p_{\gamma}) dp_{\gamma} = 0.$$

Also let

$$f(p_{\gamma}) := \int_{-2k}^{p_{\gamma}} r(t) \, dt$$

and

$$g(p_\gamma):=-\int_{-\sqrt{2k}}^{p_\gamma}\frac{2k+t}{1+2t}r(t)\,dt.$$

Clearly (67) holds. With these choices, f vanishes only at -2k, is negative at the left of -2k and positive at the right of -2k. But now  $g \le 0$ , it vanishes outside a small neighbourhood of -2k and g(-2k) < 0, thus (66) also holds since now  $1 + 2p_{\gamma}$  is negative in the small neighbourhood of -2k.

#### **Lemma 6.13.** The hypersurface $\Sigma_k$ is displaceable for k < 1/4.

*Proof.* Consider the Hamiltonian in  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus G)$  given by  $f = p_{\beta}$ . Clearly  $p_{\beta}$  does not change along the Hamiltonian flow of f and  $p_{\alpha}$  and  $p_{\gamma}$  change according to

$$\dot{p_{\alpha}} = \{p_{\beta}, p_{\alpha}\} = p_{\gamma} + 1,$$
  
$$\dot{p_{\gamma}} = \{p_{\beta}, p_{\gamma}\} = p_{\alpha}.$$

These equations are easy to solve and one finds that

$$2p_{\alpha}(t) = (p_{\alpha}(0) + p_{\gamma}(0) + 1)e^{t} + (p_{\alpha}(0) - p_{\gamma}(0) - 1)e^{-t}.$$

But if k < 1/4 and  $[p_{\alpha}(0)]^2 + [p_{\beta}(0)]^2 + [p_{\gamma}(0)]^2 = 2k$ , then

$$p_{\alpha}(0) + p_{\gamma}(0) + 1 \ge 1 - 2\sqrt{k} > 0,$$

and the flow of f will displace  $\Sigma_k$  as desired.

Closed contractible orbits and entropy. We now will study dynamical properties of the magnetic flow. For this purpose it is better to revert to  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  and use the group structure.

Equation (62) gives the Euler equations in  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})^*$ . These are easily solved and after a time shift one obtains:

$$p_{\alpha} = A \cos \mu t$$
,  $p_{\beta} = A \sin \mu t$ ,  $p_{\gamma} = C$ ,

where  $\mu := -1 - 2C$ ,  $A^2 + C^2 = 2k$  and k is the value of the energy. This curve b(t) in  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})^*$  gives rise to a curve a(t) in  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  via the Legendre transform of H:

$$\begin{split} a(t) &= A\cos\mu tX + A\sin\mu tY + C\,V\\ &= A\cos\mu t \left(\begin{array}{cc} 1/2 & 0\\ 0 & -1/2 \end{array}\right) + A\sin\mu t \left(\begin{array}{cc} 0 & -1/2\\ -1/2 & 0 \end{array}\right) + C \left(\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 1/2\\ -1/2 & 0 \end{array}\right)\\ &= \frac{A}{2} \left(\begin{array}{cc} \cos\mu t & -\sin\mu t\\ -\sin\mu t & -\cos\mu t \end{array}\right) + \frac{C}{2} \left(\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 1\\ -1 & 0 \end{array}\right). \end{split}$$

Let us consider the loop of matrices in SO(2) given by

$$Q(t) := \left( \begin{array}{cc} \cos(\mu t/2) & \sin(\mu t/2) \\ -\sin(\mu t/2) & \cos(\mu t/2) \end{array} \right).$$

Clearly  $Q(t) = e^{tR}$  where

$$R = \left( \begin{array}{cc} 0 & \mu/2 \\ -\mu/2 & 0 \end{array} \right).$$

Then we may write a(t) as

$$a(t) = Q(t) \begin{pmatrix} A/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -A/2 \end{pmatrix} Q^*(t) + \frac{C}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{68}$$

where  $Q^*(t)$  denotes the transpose of Q(t). Since our system is left-invariant, in order to find the solution of  $X_H$  through a point  $(q,p) \in PSL(2,\mathbb{R}) \times \mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})^*$  with H(p) = k and p = (A,0,C) we may proceed as follows (cf. [5, Appendix 2] or [2, Section 4.4]). We compute a(t) and then we solve the matrix differential equation in  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  given by

$$\dot{g}(t) = g(t)a(t), \quad g(0) = I.$$

The desired solution curve is (q g(t), b(t)). To solve the matrix differential equation we make the change of variables

$$h(t) := g(t)Q(t).$$

A calculation using (68) shows that h satisfies

$$\dot{h}(t) = h(t) d,$$

where d is the constant matrix

$$d:=\frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{array}{cc}A&C+\mu\\-(C+\mu)&-A\end{array}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{array}{cc}A&-1-C\\1+C&-A\end{array}\right).$$

Therefore we have obtained the following explicit formula for our magnetic flow  $\phi_t$ :

$$\phi_t(q, p) = (q e^{td} Q^*(t), b(t)). \tag{69}$$

From this equation we shall derive various dynamical consequences. We will say that the matrix  $d \in \mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  is elliptic if  $(1+C)^2 > A^2$ , parabolic if  $(1+C)^2 = A^2$  and hyperbolic if  $(1+C)^2 < A^2$ .

Recall from Section 3 the definition of tameness and the  $\omega$ -energy

$$\Omega \colon X(\Sigma_k) \to \mathbb{R}, \qquad v \mapsto \int \bar{v}^* \omega.$$

**Lemma 6.14.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  has closed contractible orbits if and only if k < 1/4. If k < 1/4 and  $v \in X(\Sigma_k)$  then  $\Omega(v)$  is a positive integer multiple of  $\pi(1 - \sqrt{1 - 4k}) > 0$  and  $\Sigma_k$  is tame.

Proof. Before embarking into the proof we make some preliminary remarks about  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ . A matrix  $d \in \mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$  satisfies  $e^d = \pm I$  if and only if  $\det d > 0$  (i.e. d is elliptic) and  $\sqrt{\det d}/\pi$  is a positive integer. Let us call  $\tau := \pi/\sqrt{\det d}$  the period of d. It has the property of being the smallest positive real number t for which  $e^{td} = \pm I$  (and in fact equal to -I). The fundamental group of  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R}) = S\mathbb{H}^2$  is of course  $\mathbb{Z}$  and is generated by the loop  $[0,\tau] \ni t \mapsto e^{td}$  of any elliptic element d. Any two such loops determined by elements  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  will be homotopic iff  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  belong to the same side (i.e. connected component) of the solid cone  $\det d > 0$  in the Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})$ . If they belong to opposite sides of the cone, they will have opposite homotopy classes.

Suppose now that we look for a closed contractible orbit on  $\Sigma_k$  with  $\mu \neq 0$ . For b(t) to be periodic it must have period  $T := 2\pi l/|\mu|$  where l is a positive integer. Using (69) we see that

$$\phi_T(q, p) = (q e^{Td}, p) = (q, p)$$

and this happens if and only if the matrix d is elliptic and  $e^{Td} = \pm I$  (recall that we are working in  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ ). The last equality forces  $T = m\tau$ , where m is a positive integer and  $\tau$  is the period of d as defined above. In order for this closed orbit to be contractible in  $\Sigma_k$  we need the loop

$$[0,T]\ni t\mapsto e^{td}e^{-tR}$$

to be contractible in  $PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ . But the homotopy class of this loop is m[d] - l[R], where [d] and [R] denote the homotopy classes associated to d and R respectively. Since m and l are positive and  $[d] = \pm [R]$ , the loop will be contractible iff m = l and [d] = [R] (i.e. d and R must belong to the same side of the cone det d > 0). Hence  $2|\mu| = 1/\sqrt{\det d}$  which translates into  $2C^2 + 2C = -2k$ . Since d is elliptic we must have  $(1 + C)^2 > A^2 = 2k - C^2$  which implies k < 1/4 as desired

The quadratic equation  $2C^2 + 2C = -2k$  gives the following values for C and  $\mu$ :

$$2C = -1 \pm \sqrt{1 - 4k}, \quad \mu = \mp \sqrt{1 - 4k}.$$

However, the values  $2C = -1 - \sqrt{1 - 4k}$ ,  $\mu = \sqrt{1 - 4k}$  give rise to elements d and R such that [d] = -[R]. Hence the unique values of C and  $\mu$  for which we obtain closed contractible orbits are:

$$2C = -1 + \sqrt{1 - 4k}, \quad \mu = -\sqrt{1 - 4k}.$$

Finally, note that if we are at a p with  $\mu = 0$ , then the flow is just  $\phi_t(q, p) = (qe^{td}, p)$  and even though the orbits are all closed, they are clearly not contractible.

Since  $d\psi = \omega$ , to compute  $\Omega(v)$  for a contractible closed orbit v on  $\Sigma_k$  we just need to integrate  $\psi$  along one of the closed orbits of  $\phi_t$  described above. Since  $\psi(X_H) = 2k + C$  we deduce

$$\Omega(v) = T(2k + C) = \pi l(1 - \sqrt{1 - 4k}) > 0.$$

This also shows that  $\Sigma_k$  is tame.

**Lemma 6.15.** The topological entropy of  $\phi_t$  on  $\Sigma_k$  is zero if and only if  $k \leq 1/4$ .

Proof. Recall that by the variational principle for topological entropy and Ruelle's inequality, the topological entropy vanishes if all the Lyapunov exponents are zero. Recall also that by Pesin's formula, the topological entropy is at least the integral of the sum of the positive Lyapunov exponents with respect to the Liouville measure [42]. Inspection of (69) shows that all the Lyapunov exponents are zero if if all possible d's are elliptic or parabolic. It also shows that as soon as there are d's which are hyperbolic, there will be a positive measure set (with respect to the Liouville measure) with positive Lyapunov exponents. Hence the topological entropy of the flow is zero if and only if all possible d's are elliptic or parabolic. This will happen if and only if  $2C^2 + 2C + 1 \ge 2k$  for all  $C \in [-\sqrt{2k}, \sqrt{2k}]$ . It is easy to see that this is equivalent to saying that  $k \le 1/4$ .

**Lemma 6.16.** The hypersurfaces  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  and  $\Sigma_{1/4}$  are not stable.

*Proof.* By Lemma 6.14,  $\Sigma_{1/4}$  has no closed contractible orbits. By Lemma 6.13,  $\Sigma_k$  is displaceable for any k < 1/4, hence Theorem 1.5 implies that  $\Sigma_{1/4}$  is not

stable. Alternatively, we could say that  $\Sigma_{1/4}$  contains a copy of the horocycle flow (arising when  $\mu = 0$ ) and thus it cannot be stable.

The proof that  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  is not stable is a bit more involved and we need some preliminary observations.

**Lemma 6.17.** Let N be a closed manifold with a non-zero geodesible vector field F. Suppose G is a compact Lie group acting on N and leaving F invariant. Then there exists a G-invariant 1-form which stabilizes F.

*Proof.* Let  $\mu$  be the Haar probability measure and  $\varphi_g$  the diffeomorphism on N determined by  $g \in G$ . Let  $\lambda$  be a stabilizing 1-form for F and set

$$\tilde{\lambda} := \int_{G} \varphi_g^* \lambda \, d\mu(g).$$

It is straightforward to check that  $\tilde{\lambda}$  is G-invariant and that it stabilizes F.  $\square$ 

Consider the flow of V on  $\Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$ ; it is simply given by the right action of  $e^{tV}$ . Its lift to  $T^*(\Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R})) = \Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R}) \times \mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{R})^*$  is given by

$$(q, p) \mapsto (qe^{tV}, \operatorname{Ad}_{e^{tV}}^*(p)).$$
 (70)

This gives an action of  $S^1$  that leaves H,  $\tau^*\gamma$  and  $d\psi$  invariant, so  $S^1$  acts on  $(T^*(\Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})), \omega)$  by Hamiltonian transformations and it has moment map  $p_{\gamma}$ . We denote the vector field of this  $S^1$  action by  $V^*$ .

Let  $\Sigma_{1/2,C} \subset \Sigma_{1/2}$  be given by  $p_{\gamma} = C$  and C is constant (energy-momentum reduction). Clearly  $S^1$  leaves  $\Sigma_{1/2,C}$  invariant and,  $X_H$  and  $V^*$  are linearly independent except when  $C = \pm 1$ .

Suppose  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  is stable. By Lemma 6.17 we may take an  $S^1$ -invariant stabilizing 1-form  $\lambda$ . Consider the restriction of both  $\lambda$  and  $\psi$  to the 4-manifold  $\Sigma_{1/2,C}$  for C>-1 close to -1. The forms  $d\lambda$  and  $d\psi=\omega$  are both annihilated by  $X_H$ . The form  $d\psi$  is annihilated by  $V^*$  and we claim that  $d\lambda$  is also annihilated by  $V^*$ . To see this, it suffices to show that  $\lambda(V^*)$  is a constant function since  $\lambda$  is  $S^1$ -invariant. Observe that the function  $\lambda(V^*)$  is invariant under both  $S^1$  and the flow of  $X_H$  so it descends to a function on  $\Sigma_{1/2,C}/S^1=\Gamma\setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  which is invariant under the reduced flow of  $X_H$ . However, this reduced flow is given by the right action of  $e^{td}$ . This follows from (69) and (70) (note that  $b(t)=\mathrm{Ad}_{e^{-t\mu V}}^*(p)$ ). Since d is hyperbolic for -1< C<0, the right action of  $e^{td}$  is Anosov and thus  $\lambda(V^*)$  must be a constant.

Hence, the forms  $d\lambda$  and  $d\psi = \omega$  are both annhilated by  $X_H$  and  $V^*$ . Since  $d\psi$  is non-degenerate in a transverse plane to the span of  $X_H$  and  $V^*$  we deduce that there exists a smooth function  $f \colon \Sigma_{1/2,C} \to \mathbb{R}$  such that on  $\Sigma_{1/2,C}$  we have

$$d\lambda = f d\psi$$
.

The function f is invariant under both  $S^1$  and the flow of  $X_H$  so it also descends to a function on  $\Sigma_{1/2,C}/S^1 = \Gamma \backslash PSL(2,\mathbb{R})$  which is invariant under the reduced

flow of  $X_H$  and as above, we deduce that f must be a constant. If we now let C vary close to -1 we get f = f(C) and  $d\lambda = f(C)d\psi$ . We wish to derive a contradiction from this.

We proceed as follows. On  $\Sigma_{1/2} = \Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R}) \times S^2$  we let  $\tilde{X} := (X,0)$  and  $\tilde{Y} := (Y,0)$ . These vectors are of course tangent to  $\Sigma_{1/2,C}$  for every C. A simple calculation shows that  $d\psi(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y}) = d\nu(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y}) + \tau^* d\gamma(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y}) = 0 + 1 = 1$  and thus  $f(C) = d\lambda(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y})$ . We now let  $C \to -1$  and we may suppose that  $f(C) \to a$  for some  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ . On  $\Sigma_{1/2,-1} = \Gamma \setminus PSL(2,\mathbb{R}) \times \{(0,0,-1)\}$  we have

$$d\lambda = a d\psi$$
.

The 1-form  $\lambda - a \psi$  is closed and  $(\lambda - a \psi)(X_H) = \lambda(X_H) > 0$  since  $\psi(X_H) = 0$  on  $\Sigma_{1/2,-1}$ . But this is impossible since the Hamiltonian flow on  $\Sigma_{1/2,-1}$  is given by the circle action

$$\phi_t(q, p) = (qQ^*(t), p),$$

which is completely periodic with all closed orbits homologous to zero. Thus  $\Sigma_{1/2}$  cannot be stable and Lemma 6.16 is proved.

### 6.4 Sol-manifolds

Let  $G = \mathbf{Sol}$  be the semidirect product of  $\mathbb{R}^2$  with  $\mathbb{R}$ , with coordinates  $(y_0, y_1, u)$  and multiplication

$$(y_0, y_1, u) \star (y'_0, y'_1, u') = (y_0 + e^u y'_0, y_1 + e^{-u} y'_1, u + u').$$

The map  $(y_0, y_1, u) \mapsto u$  is the epimorphism  $\mathbf{Sol} \to \mathbb{R}$  whose kernel is the normal subgroup  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . The group  $\mathbf{Sol}$  is isomorphic to the matrix group

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} e^u & 0 & y_0 \\ 0 & e^{-u} & y_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right).$$

It is not difficult to see that **Sol** admits cocompact lattices. Let  $A \in SL(2,\mathbb{Z})$  be such that there is  $P \in GL(2,\mathbb{R})$  with

$$PAP^{-1} = \left(\begin{array}{cc} \lambda & 0\\ 0 & 1/\lambda \end{array}\right)$$

and  $\lambda > 1$ . There is an injective homomorphism

$$\mathbb{Z}^2 \ltimes_A \mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Sol}$$

given by  $(m, n, l) \mapsto (P(m, n), (\log \lambda) l)$  which defines a cocompact lattice  $\Gamma$  in **Sol**. The closed 3-manifold  $\Gamma \setminus \mathbf{Sol}$  is a 2-torus bundle over the circle with hyperbolic gluing map A.

If we denote by  $p_u$ ,  $p_{y_0}$  and  $p_{y_1}$  the momenta that are canonically conjugate to u,  $y_0$  and  $y_1$  respectively, then the functions

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \alpha_0 & = & e^u p_{y_0}, \\ \alpha_1 & = & e^{-u} p_{y_1}, \\ \nu & = & p_u \end{array}$$

are left-invariant functions on  $T^*$ **Sol**. The closed 2-form

$$\sigma = -dy_0 \wedge dy_1 \tag{71}$$

is also left-invariant, and we consider the twisted symplectic form

$$\omega_{\sigma} = dp_u \wedge du + dp_{y_0} \wedge dy_0 + dp_{y_1} \wedge dy_1 - dy_0 \wedge dy_1.$$

The Casimir of  $\mathfrak{g}^*$  is  $f = \nu + \alpha_0 \alpha_1$  and the left-invariant Hamiltonian is given by  $2H := \alpha_0^2 + \alpha_1^2 + \nu^2$ . An easy calculation shows that the vector field of the magnetic flow is:

$$X_H = (e^u \alpha_0, e^{-u} \alpha_1, \nu, -\alpha_1 + \nu \alpha_0, \alpha_0 - \nu \alpha_1, \alpha_1^2 - \alpha_0^2).$$

The dynamics of the magnetic flow is very interesting and was investigated in [10]. It turns out that all energy levels have positive Liouville entropy and they all carry closed contractible orbits. The magnetic field is non-exact and is a generator of  $H^2(\Gamma \setminus \mathbf{Sol}, \mathbb{R})$ . Since the lattices are solvable there are no bounded primitives for  $\sigma$  in  $\mathbf{Sol}$  and the Mañé critical value is  $\infty$ .

**Proposition 6.18.** The hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is stable and displaceable for any k > 0.

Proof. Let

$$\lambda := f du + \frac{1}{2} (\alpha_0 d\alpha_1 - \alpha_1 d\alpha_0).$$

Since all objects involved in the definition of  $\lambda$  are left-invariant,  $\lambda$  descends to compact quotients of **Sol**. A calculation using that  $df(X_H) = 0$  shows that  $i_{X_H} d\lambda = 0$ . One also sees that

$$\lambda(X_H) = k + \frac{\nu^2}{2} > 0,$$

and thus  $\lambda$  stabilizes  $\Sigma_k$ . The proof that  $\Sigma_k$  is displaceable can be found in [10] and is similar to the proof of Lemma 6.6.

## 6.5 The case of $\sigma$ symplectic

In this subsection we study the special case in which the closed left-invariant 2-form  $\sigma$  is symplectic and we show that low energy levels are always stable.

**Proposition 6.19.** Assume that  $\sigma$  is symplectic and let  $H(\mu) = |\mu|^2/2$  for some fixed positive definite inner product in  $\mathfrak{g}^*$ . Then there exists  $k_0 > 0$  such that for all  $k < k_0$  the hypersurface  $\Sigma_k$  is stable.

*Proof.* We will show that there exists  $k_0 > 0$  such that for all  $k < k_0$  the Euler vector field E is geodesible in  $\mathbf{S}_k$ . By Lemma 2.3 this implies the stability of  $\Sigma_k$ .

Since  $\sigma$  is symplectic, inspection of the bracket given in (ii) of Lemma 6.1 shows that for all k sufficiently small, the Poisson bracket  $\{\ ,\ \}_{\sigma}$  is non-degenerate on the set  $H^{-1}([0,k]) \subset \mathfrak{g}^*$ . In other words, for all  $\mu \in H^{-1}([0,k])$  the linear map  $B_{\mu} \colon \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{g}^*$  given by

$$B_{\mu}(X)(w) := \mu([X, w]) - \sigma_e(X, w)$$

is invertible. Let  $A: \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{g}^*$  be  $A(X)(w) := \sigma_e(X, w)$ . We may write

$$E(\mu) = E^0(\mu) - J\mu$$

where  $J: \mathfrak{g}^* \to \mathfrak{g}^*$  is defined by  $J\mu(w) := \sigma(d_{\mu}H, w)$  and  $E^0$  is the Euler vector field for  $\sigma = 0$ . A short computation shows that J is uniquely determined by

$$\hat{\sigma}(\xi,\eta) := \sigma(A^{-1}\xi,A^{-1}\eta) = \langle \xi,J^{-1}\eta \rangle.$$

For k small the Poisson structure  $\{\ ,\ \}_\sigma$  is induced by the symplectic form  $\varpi$  in  $H^{-1}([0,k])$  given by

$$\varpi(\mu)(B_{\mu}(v), B_{\mu}(w)) := \mu([v, w]) - \sigma(v, w).$$

Inverting  $B_{\mu}$  we get

$$\varpi = -\hat{\sigma} + d\tau$$

where  $\tau$  is a 1-form such that  $|\tau(\mu)| = O(k)$  for  $\mu \in H^{-1}([0, k])$ . (The 2-form  $\varpi + \hat{\sigma}$  is  $O(k^{1/2})$ , so we can choose a primitive which is O(k).) Let  $\alpha$  be the 1-form in  $\mathfrak{g}^*$  given by  $\alpha(\mu)(\eta) := \langle \mu, J^{-1}\eta \rangle/2$ . Then

$$\varpi = d(-\alpha + \tau).$$

On  $\mathbf{S}_k$  we have  $i_E \varpi = 0$  and

$$(-\alpha + \tau)(\mu)(E(\mu)) = \alpha(\mu)(J\mu) - \alpha(\mu)(E^{0}(\mu)) + \tau(\mu)(E^{0}(\mu)) - \tau(\mu)(J\mu)$$
$$= k + O(k^{3/2}).$$

because  $\alpha(J\mu) = |\mu|^2/2 = k$  and  $E^0(\mu)$  is quadratic in  $\mu$ . Thus for k small  $(-\alpha + \tau)(E) > 0$  on  $\mathbf{S}_k$  and E is geodesible (in fact contact).

Suppose now that G admits a cocompact lattice  $\Gamma \subset G$ . Then we have a symplectic manifold  $(\Gamma \setminus G, \sigma)$ . Any left invariant metric will give rise to a magnetic flow with stable low energy levels. We now look in detail at a concrete example.

Example 6.20. Consider the 4-dimensional nilpotent Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{g}$  with basis  $\{X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4\}$  whose only non-zero bracket is  $[X_1, X_2] = X_3$ . If  $\{e_1, e_2, e_3, e_4\}$  is the dual basis of  $\mathfrak{g}^*$ , then  $de_1 = de_2 = de_4 = 0$  and  $de_3 = -e_1 \wedge e_2$ . The symplectic 2-form is

$$\sigma = -e_1 \wedge e_3 - e_2 \wedge e_4.$$

If  $x_i$  denote the coordinates of  $\mu \in \mathfrak{g}^*$  in the given basis we easily find that the non-zero Poisson brackets of  $\{\ ,\ \}_{\sigma}$  are:

$${x_1, x_2} = x_3, \quad {x_1, x_3} = {x_2, x_4} = 1.$$

We see right away that  $\{\ ,\ \}$  is non-degenerate at every point  $\mu \in \mathfrak{g}^*$ . In this case it is easy to invert the operator  $B_{\mu}$  of the previous proposition and we find  $\varpi$  to be

$$\varpi = -\sigma - x_3 dx_3 \wedge dx_4$$
  
=  $dx_1 \wedge dx_3 + dx_2 \wedge dx_4 - x_3 dx_3 \wedge dx_4$ .

If we let

$$\theta := \frac{x_1 dx_3 - x_3 dx_1 + x_2 dx_4 - x_4 dx_2}{2} - \frac{x_3^2 dx_4}{2}$$

then

$$\varpi = d\theta$$
.

Now take  $H(\mu) = |\mu|^2/2$ , where the inner product is defined so that  $\{e_1, e_2, e_3, e_4\}$  is an orthonormal basis. The Euler vector field  $E_H$  is easily computed using Lemma 6.1. One finds

$$E_H(\mu) = (-x_2x_3 - x_3, x_1x_3 - x_4, x_1, x_2)$$
  
=  $E_H^0(\mu) - J\mu$   
=  $(-x_2x_3, x_1x_3, 0, 0) - (x_3, x_4, -x_1, -x_2).$ 

Next we compute  $\theta(E_H)$  and we find:

$$\theta(E_H) = \frac{x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2}{2} - \frac{x_1 x_3 x_4}{2}.$$

Using that

$$\frac{x_1 x_3 x_4}{2} = -\frac{d(x_2 x_4)(E_H)}{2} + \frac{x_4^2 - x_2^2}{2}$$

we obtain

$$\left(\theta + \frac{d(x_2x_4)}{2}\right)(E_H) = \frac{x_1^2 + 2x_2^2 + x_3^2}{2}.$$

Then

$$\varphi := \theta + \frac{d(x_2 x_4)}{2}$$

is a primitive of  $\varpi$  such that on  $\mathbf{S}_k$ :

$$\varphi(E_H) \geq 0$$

with equality if and only if  $x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0$  and  $x_4 = \pm \sqrt{2k}$ . Since this set is not invariant under the flow of  $E_H$  we conclude that for any invariant Borel probability measure  $\nu$  on  $\mathbf{S}_k$  we have

$$\int_{\mathbf{S}_k} \varphi(E_H) \, d\nu > 0$$

and thus  $E_H$  is in fact of contact type by Theorem 2.7.

Summarizing, we have shown that  $E_H$  is geodesible on  $\mathbf{S}_k$  for any k > 0. Let G be the simply connected Lie group with Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{g}$ . This group certainly admits cocompact lattices  $\Gamma$ . The manifold  $(\Gamma \setminus G, \sigma)$  is symplectic (with first Betti number 3 in fact) and with the left invariant metric considered above we obtain that  $\Sigma_k$  is stable for any k > 0. Every compact set here is displaceable by [10, Theorem B] and the Mañé critical value is  $\infty$  since  $\Gamma$  is nilpotent.

A realisation of G is  $\mathcal{H} \times \mathbb{R}$  where  $\mathcal{H}$  is the 3-dimensional Heisenberg group. The metric is just the product metric. It is easy to see that  $\mathcal{H}$  has no contractible closed geodesics, hence the same is true for G.

### 7 Proofs of the theorems

#### 7.1 Proof of Theorem 1.1

For the case of tame stable hypersurfaces and tame stable homotopies the theorem is a consequence of Theorems 4.14 and 4.15. Note that we could take as definition of  $RFH(\Sigma)$  either  $\overline{RFH}(\Sigma,V)$  or  $\underline{RFH}(\Sigma,V)$ . The claims for the virtually contact case are straightforward extensions of the contact case treated in [12]. Indeed, the virtually contact condition implies that the period-action inequality for almost Reeb orbits of Proposition 3.2 in [12] continues to hold with constants now depending on the constants appearing in the virtually contact condition. Here we use that  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  injects into  $\pi_1(M)$ . Similarly, for the time-dependent case Proposition 3.4 in [12] continues to hold for a virtually contact homotopy. Having established these two Propositions the forthcoming arguments can be repeated just word by word.

Remark. In the virtually contact case, one can replace the condition that  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  injects into  $\pi_1(V)$  by a weaker condition which we now explain.

Consider a Hamiltonian structure  $\omega$  on a closed odd dimensional manifold  $\Sigma$ . We call the pair  $(\Sigma, \omega)$  virtually contact, if on a cover  $\pi \colon \widetilde{\Sigma} \to \Sigma$  there exists

a primitive  $\lambda \in \Omega^1(\widetilde{\Sigma})$  of  $\pi^*\omega$  with the property that for one and hence every Riemannian metric g on  $\Sigma$  there exists a constant c = c(g) > 0 such that

$$||\lambda||_{\pi^*g} \le c, \qquad ||\xi||_{\pi^*g} \le c|\lambda(\xi)|, \quad \forall \ \xi \in \ker(\pi^*\omega).$$

We refer to the one-form  $\lambda$  as a bounded primitive. A closed hypersurface  $\Sigma$  in a symplectic manifold  $(V, \omega)$  is called of virtual restricted contact type, if there exists a cover  $\pi \colon \widetilde{V} \to V$  and a primitive  $\lambda$  of  $\pi^*\omega$  such that  $\lambda|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)}$  is a bounded primitive for  $(\Sigma, \omega|_{\Sigma})$ .

Lemma 7.1. Assume that  $(V, \omega)$  is symplectically aspherical, i.e.  $\omega$  vanishes on  $\pi_2(V)$ , and  $\Sigma \subset V$  is a closed hypersurface with the property that  $(\Sigma, \omega|_{\Sigma})$  is virtually contact and the inclusion homomorphism  $i_* \colon \pi_1(\Sigma) \to \pi_1(V)$  is injective. Then  $\Sigma$  is of virtual restricted contact type.

*Proof.* Let  $\pi \colon \widetilde{V} \to V$  be the universal cover of V. Since  $\widetilde{V}$  is simply connected we have by Hurewicz theorem that

$$H_2(\widetilde{V}; \mathbb{Z}) = \pi_2(\widetilde{V}) = \pi_2(V).$$

Since  $(V, \omega)$  is symplectically aspherical we deduce that  $\pi^*\omega$  vanishes on  $H_2(\widetilde{V}; \mathbb{Z})$  and hence

$$[\pi^*\omega] = 0 \in H^2_{dR}(\widetilde{V}).$$

We conclude that there exists  $\lambda_0 \in \Omega^1(\widetilde{V})$  such that

$$d\lambda_0 = \pi^* \omega.$$

Because  $(\Sigma, \omega|_{\Sigma})$  is virtually contact, there exists a bounded primitive  $\lambda_1$  on a cover of  $\Sigma$ . Since  $\lambda_1$  is bounded, there exists a bounded lift  $\widetilde{\lambda}_1$  to  $\pi^{-1}(\Sigma) \subset \widetilde{V}$ . Note that

$$d\lambda_0|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} - d\widetilde{\lambda}_1 = \pi^*\omega|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} - \pi^*\omega|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} = 0.$$

We conclude that  $\lambda_0|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} - \widetilde{\lambda}_1$  defines a class

$$\left[\lambda_0|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)}-\widetilde{\lambda}_1\right]\in H^1_{dR}\left(\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)\right).$$

However, since  $i_*: \pi_1(\Sigma) \to \pi_1(V)$  is injective, each connected component of  $\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)$  is simply connected. Therefore  $H^1_{dR}(\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)) = \{0\}$  and consequently there exists  $f \in C^{\infty}(\pi^{-1}(\Sigma), \mathbb{R})$  such that

$$df = \lambda_0|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} - \widetilde{\lambda}_1.$$

Extend f to a smooth map  $\widetilde{f} \in C^{\infty}(\widetilde{V}, \mathbb{R})$  and set

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 - d\widetilde{f}.$$

Noting that

$$\lambda|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} = \lambda_0|_{\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)} - df = \widetilde{\lambda}_1$$

we conclude that  $\lambda$  is a primitive of  $\pi^*\omega$  whose restriction to  $\pi^{-1}(\Sigma)$  is bounded. This finishes the proof of the lemma.

Theorem 1.1 continues to hold with the same proof if we assume that  $\Sigma$  is of virtual restricted contact type. The hypersurfaces of Lemma 5.1 are of virtual restricted contact type, but when dim M=2,  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  does not inject into  $\pi_1(T^*M)$ .

### 7.2 Proof of Theorem 1.2

Let  $\sigma = 0$ . By Lemma 5.2, the Mañé critical value is given by  $c = \max U$  and all regular level sets  $\Sigma_k$  are of restricted contact type, so  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  is defined.

For k > c each  $\Sigma_k$  is regular. By the invariance of Rabinowitz Floer homology under contact homotopies, we can compute  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  for zero potential. In this case it is non-zero by Corollary 1.12 in [14]. In particular,  $\Sigma_k$  is non-displaceable for  $k \geq c$ . The dynamics on  $\Sigma_k$ , k > c, is given by the geodesic flow of the Jacobi metric g/(k-U). The level set  $\Sigma_c$  is singular.

For k < c,  $\Sigma_k$  is displaceable because it misses one fibre.

#### 7.3 Proof of Theorem 1.3

For k > c,  $\Sigma_k$  is virtually contact by Lemma 5.1 (in fact it is of virtual restricted contact type) thus  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  is defined and invariant under virtually contact homotopies. In particular the isomorphism type of  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  is independent of k.

Consider a path of Riemannian metrics  $[0,1] \ni t \mapsto g_t$  such that  $g_0 = g$  and  $g_1$  is a metric of negative curvature. By taking  $k > \max_{t \in [0,1]} c_t$  and using that the isomorphism type of  $RFH(\Sigma_{k,t})$  is independent of t as well, we may suppose that g itself is negatively curved. But it is well known that the geodesic flow of a negatively curved metric is Anosov and does not have non-trivial closed contractible orbits. By structural stability the same is true for the orbits of  $\Sigma_k$  provided k is sufficiently large. It follows from Theorem 1.1 that  $RFH(\Sigma_k)$  does not vanish and thus  $\Sigma_k$  is non-displaceable.

### 7.4 Proof of Theorem 1.4

This is just Theorem 5.6.

#### 7.5 Proof of Theorem 1.5

We argue by contradiction. Suppose the energy level  $\Sigma_c$  is stable. We will show that  $\Sigma_c$  must contain a contractible periodic orbit. By Lemma 2.5 there exists a tubular neighborhood  $(-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \times \Sigma_c$  of  $\Sigma_c$  such that the characteristic foliations on  $\{r\} \times \Sigma_c$  are conjugate for all  $r \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ . But by hypothesis, every compact set contained in the set  $H^{-1}(-\infty, c)$  is displaceable, hence we may apply the

main result of Schlenk [65], to conclude that for almost every r, with r < 0,  $\{r\} \times \Sigma_c$  carries a closed contractible orbit. By stability,  $\Sigma_c$  must also carry a closed contractible orbit.

# 7.6 Proof of Theorems 1.6, 1.8 and 1.9

Theorem 1.6 follows from the lemmas in Section 6.2 and Theorem 1.1. Theorem 1.8 follows from the lemmas in Section 6.3 and Theorem 1.1. Theorem 1.9 follows from the results in Section 6.1 and Theorem 1.1.

# References

- [1] A. Abbondandolo, M. Schwarz, Estimates and computations in Rabinowitz-Floer homology, J. Topol. Anal. 1 (2009), 307–405.
- [2] R. Abraham, J.E. Marsden, Foundations of mechanics, Second edition, Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Co., Inc., Advanced Book Program, Reading, Mass. (1978).
- [3] D. Anosov, Y. Sinai, Some smooth ergodic theorems, Russian Math. Surveys 22, no. 5 (1967), 103–167.
- [4] V.I. Arnold, On some problems in symplectic topology, Topology and geometry—Rohlin Seminar, 1–5, Lecture Notes in Math. **1346** Springer, Berlin, 1988.
- [5] V.I. Arnold, Mathematical methods of classical mechanics, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, 60 Springer-Verlag, New York (1989).
- [6] M. Audin, F. Lalonde, L. Polterovich Symplectic rigidity: Lagrangian submanifolds, Holomorphic curves in symplectic geometry, 271–321, Progr. Math., 117, Birkh?user, Basel, 1994.
- [7] P. Bernard, Symplectic aspects of Mather theory, Duke Math. J. 136 (2007), 401–420.
- [8] K. Burns, G.P. Paternain, Anosov magnetic flows, critical values and topological entropy, Nonlinearity 15 (2002) 281–314.
- [9] L.T. Butler, An optical Hamiltonian and obstructions to integrability, Nonlinearity 19 (2006) 2123–2135.
- [10] L.T. Butler, G.P. Paternain, Magnetic flows on Sol-manifolds: dynamical and symplectic aspects, Comm. Math. Phys. 284 (2008) 187–202.
- [11] C. Camacho, A. Lins Neto, Geometric theory of foliations, Birkhäuser Verlag, 1985.

- [12] K. Cieliebak, U. Frauenfelder, A Floer homology for exact contact embeddings, Pacific J. Math. 239 (2009) 251–316.
- [13] K. Cieliebak, U. Frauenfelder, Morse homology on noncompact manifolds, arXiv:0911.1805 (2009).
- [14] K. Cieliebak, U. Frauenfelder, A. Oancea, to appear in Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup.
- [15] K. Cieliebak, U. Frauenfelder, G.P. Paternain, Stability is not open, arXiv:0908.2540 (2009).
- [16] K. Cieliebak, K. Mohnke, Compactness for punctured holomorphic curves. Conference on Symplectic Topology, J. Symp. Geom. 3 (2005), no. 4, 589–654.
- [17] K. Cieliebak, E. Volkov, First steps in stable Hamiltonian topology, arXiv:1003.5084 (2010).
- [18] G. Contreras, The Palais-Smale condition on contact type energy levels for convex Lagrangian systems, Calc. Var. Partial Diff. Equations 27 (2006), no. 3, 321–395.
- [19] G. Contreras, J. Delgado, R. Iturriaga, Lagrangian flows: the dynamics of globally minimizing orbits. II, Bol. Soc. Brasil. Mat. 28 (1997) 155–196.
- [20] G. Contreras, R. Iturriaga, G.P. Paternain, M. Paternain, Lagrangian graphs, minimizing measures, and Mañé's critical values, Geom. Funct. Anal. 8 (1998), 788–809.
- [21] G. Contreras, L. Macarini, G.P. Paternain, Periodic orbits for exact magnetic flows on surfaces, Int. Math. Res. Not. 8 (2004) 361–387.
- [22] N.S. Dairbekov, G.P. Paternain, On the cohomological equation of magnetic flows, Mat. Contemp. (volume in honour of M. DoCarmo's 80th birthday) **34** (2008), 155–193.
- [23] Y. Eliashberg, A. Givental, H. Hofer, Introduction to symplectic field theory, GAFA 2000 (Tel Aviv, 1999). Geom. Funct. Anal. 2000, Special Volume, Part II, 560–673.
- [24] A. Fathi, E. Maderna, Weak KAM theorem on non compact manifolds, NoDEA Nonlinear Differential Equations Appl. 14 (2007), 1–27.
- [25] R. Feres, A. Katok, Invariant tensor fields of dynamical systems with pinched Liapunov exponents and rigidity of geodesic flows, Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 9 (1989), 427–432.
- [26] R. Feres, Geodesic flows on manifolds of negative curvature with smooth horospheric foliations, Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 11 (1991), 653– 686.

- [27] P. Foulon, Feuilletages des sphéres et dynamiques Nord-Sud, C.R. Acad. Sci Paris, t. 318, Série I (1994), 1041–1042.
- [28] H. Furstenberg, *The unique ergodicity of the horocycle flow*, Recent advances in topological dynamics (Proc. Conf., Yale Univ., New Haven, Conn., 1972; in honour of Gustav Arnold Hedlund), Springer, Berlin, 1973, pp. 95–115. Lecture Notes in Math., Vol 318.
- [29] V.L. Ginzburg, On closed trajectories of a charge in a magnetic field. An application of symplectic geometry, Contact and symplectic geometry (Cambridge, 1994), 131–148, Publ. Newton Inst., 8, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 1996.
- [30] V. Ginzburg, B. Gürel, Periodic orbits of twisted geodesic flows and the Weinstein-Moser Theorem, Comment. Math. Helv. 84 (2009), 865–907.
- [31] V.L. Ginzburg, E. Kerman, *Periodic orbits in magnetic fields in dimensions greater than two*, Geometry and Topology in Dynamics (Winston-Salem, NC, 1998/San Antonio, TX, 1999), 113–121, Contemp. Math. **246**, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (1999).
- [32] M. Gromov, Pseudo holomorphic curves in symplectic manifolds, Invent. Math. 82 (1985), no. 2, 307–347.
- [33] M. Gromov, Kähler hyperbolicity and L<sup>2</sup>-Hodge theory, J. Differential Geom. **33** (1991), 263–292.
- [34] U. Hamenstädt, Invariant two-forms for geodesic flows, Math. Ann. 301 (1995), 677–698.
- [35] B. Hasselblatt, Regularity of the Anosov splitting and of horospherical foliations, Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 14 (1994), 645–666.
- [36] B. Hasselblatt, Horospheric foliations and relative pinching, J. Differential Geom. 39 (1994) 57–63.
- [37] M. Hirsch, C. Pugh, M. Shub, *Invariant manifolds*, Springer Lecture Notes 583, Springer, Berlin (1977).
- [38] H. Hofer, C. Wysocki, E. Zehnder, A General Fredholm theory I: A splicing-based differential geometry, J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS) 9 (2007) 841–876.
- [39] H. Hofer, C. Wysocki, E. Zehnder, A General Fredholm theory II: Implicit Function Theorems, Geom. Funct. Anal. 19 (2009) 206–293.
- [40] H. Hofer, E. Zehnder, Symplectic Invariants and Hamiltonian Dynamics, Birkhäuser (1994).
- [41] M. Kanai, Differential-geometric studies on dynamics of geodesic and frame flows, Japan. J. Math. (N.S.) 19 (1993), 1–30.

- [42] A. Katok, B. Hasselblatt, Introduction to the modern theory of dynamical systems, with a supplementary chapter by Katok and Leonardo Mendoza. Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications, 54. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1995.
- [43] W. Klingenberg, *Riemannian Geometry*, de Gruyter Studies in Mathematics 1. Walter de Gruyter, Berlin, New York, 1982.
- [44] G. Knieper, *Hyperbolic dynamics and Riemannian geometry*, Handbook of dynamical systems, Vol. 1A, 453–545, North-Holland, Amsterdam, 2002.
- [45] F. Laudenbach, J.-C. Sikorav, Hamiltonian disjunction and limits of Lagrangian submanifolds, Internat. Math. Res. Notices 4 (1994) 161–168.
- [46] G. Lu, The Weinstein conjecture on some symplectic manifolds containing the holomorphic spheres, Kyushu J. Math. **52** (1998), no. 2, 331–351.
- [47] L. Macarini, G.P. Paternain, On the stability of Mañé critical hypersurfaces, to appear in Calc. Var. Partial Diff. Equations.
- [48] R. Mañé, Lagrangian flows: the dynamics of globally minimizing orbits, Bol. Soc. Brasil. Mat. 28 (1997) 141–153.
- [49] J.N. Mather, Action minimizing invariant measures for positive definite Lagrangian systems, Math. Z. 207 (1991) 169–207.
- [50] D. McDuff, Applications of convex integration to symplectic and contact geometry, Ann. Inst. Fourier 37, no. 1 (1987), 107–133.
- [51] D. McDuff, D. Salamon, Introduction to Symplectic Topology. Second edition, Oxford Mathematical Monographs. The Clarendon Press, Oxford University Press, New York (1998).
- [52] D. McDuff, D Salamon, *J-holomorphic curves and symplectic topology*, American Mathematical Society Colloquium Publications, 52. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI (2004).
- [53] S. McLane, Categories for the Working Mathematician, (2nd ed), Graduate texts in mathematics, 5, Springer (1998).
- [54] W. Merry, Closed orbits of a charge in a weakly exact magnetic field, to appear in Pacific J. Math.
- [55] W. Merry, On the Rabinowitz Floer homology of twisted cotangent bundles, arXiv:1002.0162 (2010).
- [56] W. Merry, G.P. Paternain, Stability of Anosov Hamiltonian structures, arXiv:0903.3969 (2009).
- [57] K. Nomizu, On the cohomology of compact homogeneous spaces of nilpotent Lie groups, Ann. of Math. **59** (1954) 531–538.

- [58] S.P. Novikov, The Hamiltonian formalism and many-valued analogue of Morse theory, Russian Math. Surveys 37 (1982) 1–56.
- [59] W. Parry, Synchronisation of canonical measures for hyperbolic attractors, Comm. Math. Phys. 106, no. 2 (1986) 267–275.
- [60] G.P. Paternain, Magnetic rigidity of horocycle flows, Pacific J. Math. 225 (2006) 301–323.
- [61] G.P. Paternain, M. Paternain, Critical values of autonomous Lagrangian systems, Comment. Math. Helv. 72 (1997), 481–499.
- [62] G.P. Paternain, L. Polterovich, K.F. Siburg, Boundary rigidity for Lagrangian submanifolds, non-removable intersections, and Aubry-Mather theory, Dedicated to Vladimir I. Arnold on the occasion of his 65th birth-day. Mosc. Math. J. 3 (2003), 593–619.
- [63] L. Polterovich, An obstacle to non-Lagrangian intersection, in The Floer memorial volume, Progr. Math. 133, Birkhäuser, Basel 1995, 575–586.
- [64] P. Rabinowitz, Periodic solutions of Hamiltonian systems, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 31 (1978), no. 2, 157–184.
- [65] F. Schlenk, Applications of Hofer's geometry to Hamiltonian dynamics, Comment. Math. Helv. 81 (2006), no. 1, 105–121.
- [66] P. Scott, The geometries of 3-manifolds, Bull. London Math. Soc. 15 (1983), 401–487.
- [67] D. Sullivan, A foliation of geodesics is characterized by having no tangent homologies, J. Pure and Appl. Algebra 13 (1978), 101–104.
- [68] A. Wadsley, Geodesic foliations by circles, J. of Diff. Geom. 10 (1975), 541–549.
- [69] A. Weinstein, On the hypotheses of Rabinowitz' periodic orbit theorems,J. Diff. Equations 33 (1979), no. 3, 353–358.
- [70] C. Viterbo, Functors and computations in Floer homology with applications. I, Geom. Funct. Anal. 9 (1999) 985–1033.
- [71] C. Viterbo, Symplectic Homogeneization, preprint arXiv:0801.0206.

Kai Cieliebak, Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität, 80333 München, Germany E-mail: kai@math.lmu.de

Urs Frauenfelder, Department of Mathematics and Research Institute of Mathematics, Seoul National University

E-mail: frauenf@snu.ac.kr

Gabriel P. Paternain, University of Cambridge, Cambridge CB3 0WB, UK E-mail: g.p.paternain@dpmms.cam.ac.uk